การวิเคราะห์ทางอรรถศาสตร์และวากยสัมพันธ์ของคำบุพบท"GEI"ในภาษาจีนกลาง และการประยุกต์ใช้ในการสอน

นางสาว ชี่เฟน เชิน

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

วิทยานิพนธ์นี้เป็นส่วนหนึ่งของการศึกษาตามหลักสูตรปริญญาศิลปศาสตรมหาบัณฑิต สาขาวิชาภาษาจีนเป็นภาษาต่างประเทศ ภาควิชาภาษาตะวันออก คณะอักษรศาสตร์ จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย ปีการศึกษา 2551 ลิขสิทธิ์ของจุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

511623

漢語介詞"給"之語法、語義探討以及教學應用

Ms. Chi-fen Chen

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

此論文為朱拉隆功大學文學院東語系漢語專業 中文(作為外語教學)碩士國際課程研修內容之一部分 二〇〇八 學年度

版權所有者:朱拉隆功大學

論文題目	漢語介詞"給"之語法、語義探討以及教學應用
研究生	Ms. Chi-fen Chen
專業名稱	中文(作為外語教學)碩士國際課程
導師	Sasarux Petcherdchoo, Ph.D.
協同導師	Professor Peng Zongping, Ph.D.

此論文獲朱拉隆功大學文學院核准為碩士研修內容的一部分

文學院院長

(Assistant Professor Prapod Assavavirulhakam, Ph.D.)

論文答辯委員會

Hongkan 主任委員

(Associate Professor Ji Hongfang, Ph.D.)

導師

(Sasarux Petcherdchoo, Ph.D.)

(Professor Peng Zongping, Ph.D.) 協同導師

Trapm Manoma 委員

(Associate Professor Prapin Manomaivibool, Ph.D.)

ชี่เฟน เชิน : การวิเคราะห์ทางอรรถศาสตร์และวากยลัมพันธ์ของคำบุพบท"GEI"ในภาษาจีน กลางและการประยุกต์ใช้ในการสอน (漢語介詞 "給"之語法、語義探討以及教 學應用) อาจารย์ที่ปรึกษา: อาจารย์ ดร. ศศรักษ์ เพชรเชิดซู อาจารย์ที่ปรึกษาร่วม : ศาสตราจารย์ ดร. เผิง จงผิง, 135 หน้า.

วิทยานิพนธ์ฉบับนี้มีวัตถุประสงค์หลักสองประการ ประการที่หนึ่งได้แก่ การนำทฤษฎี ไวยากรณ์การก (Case Grammar) และไวยากรณ์หน่วยสร้าง (Construction Grammar) มา ศึกษาความหมายและโครงสร้างไวยากรณ์ของคำบุพบท "GEI" ในภาษาจีนกลาง อีกทั้งยัง นำมาใช้ในการอธิบายข้อจำกัดในการเปลี่ยนย้ายตำแหน่งคำบุพบท "GEI" ในรูปประโยคต่างๆ ประการที่สองได้แก่ การศึกษาคำบุพบท "GEI" และรูปประโยคต่างๆ เพื่อให้ผู้สอนทราบถึงสาเหตุ และความผิดพลาดในการใช้คำบุพบท "GEI" ในรูปประโยคต่างๆ ทำให้ผู้สอนสามารถอธิบายให้ ผู้เรียนเข้าใจหลักการใช้คำบุพบท "GEI" และสามารถใช้คำบุพบท "GEI" ได้อย่างถูกต้อง

จากการศึกษาพบว่า ข้อจำกัดในการเปลี่ยนย้ายตำแหน่งคำบุพบท "GEI" ในประโยคนั้น มิได้เป็นเพียงเพราะว่า สิ่งที่ถูกเคลื่อนย้ายเป็นสิ่งอันเป็นรูปธรรมหรือนามธรรม ตามที่เคยอธิบาย กันไว้ แต่เป็นเพราะว่า สิ่งของที่เคลื่อนย้ายนั้นมีอยู่ก่อนการเกิดกริยานั้นหรือไม่ และสิ่งของที่ถูก เคลื่อนย้ายกับการเคลื่อนไปถึงจุดหมายปลายทางนั้นเกิดขึ้นในเวลาเดียวกันหรือไม่ เป็นปัจจัย กำหนดข้อจำกัดในการเปลี่ยนย้ายตำแหน่งคำบุพบท "GEI" ในประโยค นอกจากนี้ผลจากการ สำรวจแบบสอบถามพบว่า สาเหตุที่นักศึกษาไทยใช้คำบุพบท "GEI" ผิดพลาดนั้นเนื่องจากความ ซับซ้อนทางความหมายและลักษณะทางไวยากรณ์ของคำบุพบท "GEI" รวมทั้งอิทธิพลของ ภาษาไทยอันเป็นภาษาแม่ของผู้เรียน

ในการจัดลำดับการเรียนการสอนคำบุพบท "GEI" นั้น ผู้วิจัยได้เรียงลำดับจากความถี่ใน การใช้ อัตราข้อผิดพลาดในการใช้ ระดับความยากของความหมายและโครงสร้างคำบุพบท "GEI" พร้อมทั้งปัจจัยความแตกต่างทางภาษา โดยมุ่งเน้นเสนอไวยากรณ์เพื่อการเรียนการสอน คำบุพบท "GEI" สำหรับผู้เรียนไทยโดยเฉพาะ ผู้วัจัยเสนอแนะให้ผู้สอนเริ่มต้นสอนคำบุพบท "GEI" ในรูปประโยคที่มีความถี่ในการใช้สูง ความหมายและโครงสร้างไม่ซับซ้อนและเป็นรูป ประโยคที่ผู้เรียนมีความคุ้นเคย จากนั้นจึงสอนโครงสร้างไวยากรณ์ที่มีความถี่ในการใช้น้อย ความหมายและโครงสร้างซับซ้อนและคำบุพบท"GEI"ในรูปประโยคที่ผู้เรียนไม่สามารถเปลี่ยน ย้ายตำแหน่งคำบุพบท "GEI"ได้อย่างถูกต้อง

ภาควิชา<u>ภาษาตะวันออก</u>ลายมือชื่อนิสิต *CU*y สาขาวิชา <u>ภาษาจีนเป็นภาษาต่างประเทศ</u> ลายมือชื่ออาจารย์ที่ปรึกษา 乞 ปีการศึกษา <u>2551</u> ลายมือชื่ออาจารย์ที่ปรึกษาร่วม *Peng Zaugpi* ผู

CHI-FEN CHEN: 漢語介詞"給"之語法、語義探討以及教學應用 (SYNTACTIC AND SEMANTIC ANALYSIS OF MANDARIN CHINESE PREPOSITION "GEI" AND ITS TEACHING APPLICATIONS) 導師: SASARUX PETCHERDCHOO, Ph.D.,協同導師: PROF. PENG ZONGPING, Ph.D. 135 頁.

本論文主要目的有兩項:第一,以"格語法"(Case Grammar)和認知語 法"句式語法"(Construction Grammar)的理論為根據來探討"給"的語義和 句法功能,並釐清"給"的句式轉換之所以受限的原因;第二,在全面梳理介 詞"給"及相關句式的基礎上,為漢語教師提供華語學習者在使用介詞"給" 時的偏誤類型和深層原因,以便幫助華語學習者確切地瞭解和正確地掌握介詞 "給"的使用原則。

本文的研究結果顯示, "給"的句式間轉換受限之因, 並非如先前的說法 是受到句式中"轉移物為實體或抽象"的限制, 而是"轉移物在動作行為發生 前存在與否"和"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步"這兩個因素決定 "給"句式間的轉換是否受到限制。而本文的調査結果發現, 泰國大學生使用 介詞"給"所產生偏誤的主要原因是"給"字本身具有的複雜語義特徵和多重 語法功能以及學習者在習得過程中, 受到母語的干擾。

在教學排序方面,本文根據介詞"給"的使用頻率、學習者偏誤率以及 "給"的語義、結構困難度等方面訂出介詞"給"的系統內排序,並考量跨語 言差距的因素,針對以泰語為母語的學習者提出介詞"給"的教學語法。建議 教師在教授介詞"給"時,應先教使用頻繁、結構與語義複雜度低而學習者所 熟悉的語法點;而後再教使用不頻繁、結構與語義複雜度高而學習者無法做正 面轉換的語法點。

系別	東語系	研究生 (小
專業名稱	中文(作爲外語教學)	導師 5 亿 .
學年	二〇〇八 年	協同導師 Peng Zorg ping

終於熬到了寫謝辭的時刻,這篇論文得以完成,需要感謝許多人。

首先感謝泰國朱拉隆功大學文學院東語系漢語專業碩士班,提供我這個進 修學習的機會。

還要感謝國立臺灣師範大學華語文研究所的鄧守信老師,在漢語語法、語 義方面的啟發和傳授,進而促成我把二〇〇五年時提交給鄧老師的期末報告發 展成這篇論文。特別感謝國立臺灣師範大學華語文研究所的陳俊光老師,指引 我擬定論文的主要方向,在百忙之中,對我在專業知識上的不足和疑惑之處,總 是不厭其煩地教授和解惑,並且鼓勵我將論文完成。

此外, 衷心感謝我的導師陳楚芬老師(Sasarux Petcherdchoo, Ph.D.), 對我的 寬容與尊重, 使我能將自己的構想和意見在論文中完整地呈現, 並對於論文中 的細節部份和疏漏之處, 給予諸多的提醒。更要感謝協同導師彭宗平老師, 在 進行論文的過程中, 給予我許多寶貴的建議與指正, 並且不遺餘力地引領著我 對論文中各個章節的關鍵之處進行了多次詳細的討論。我感到十分慶幸, 在研 讀的階段中, 不時地獲得老師們的專業指導和熱忱幫助。

也得感謝同學們的友誼之情, 皖芳在研讀這段期間內的同甘共苦、相互打 氣與細心叮嚀, 以及小柯(柯偉智) 和思娜在論文問卷調查和泰文部份義不容辭 的熱心幫忙。

當然,不能不感謝家人自始自終的支持,父母對我無微不至的關愛,還有怡 卉的相陪相助,伴我一路走過。最後,我想感謝我的先生,要是沒有舜邦對我的 全然支持與包容,沒有他盡心盡力地照顧我們的兩名稚子,雅文和雅修,我也 就無法全心全意、堅持到底地將這篇對我具有特殊意義的論文完成。

泰文摘要		iv
中文摘要		v
致謝		vi
第一章	引言	1
1.	1 問題的提出	1
1.	2 研究目的	2
1.	3 研究範圍	3
1.	4 研究意義與作用	5
1.	5 研究說明	5
第二章	文獻探討	7
2.	1 關於"給"的傳統語義分類研究	7
	2.1.1 朱德熙	7
	2.1.2 呂叔湘	8
	2.1.3 劉月華	8
	2.1.4 小結	9
2.	2 "給"的 <mark>句式</mark> 語法研究	9
	2. 2. 1 Goldberg	9
	2.2.2 沈家煊	11
	2.2.3 張伯江	13
	2.2.4 小结	14
2.	3 "給"的格語法研究 在 一个	14
	2. 3. 1 Fillmore	14
	2.3.2 鄧守信	15
	2.3.3 湯廷池	16
	2.3.4 小結	17
第三章	介詞"給"的語義功能和語法結構分析	
3.	1 "給1"至"給4"的語義分類和語法功能	
	3.1.1 "給1"至"給4"的語義分類	19
	3. 1. 2 "給 1"至"給 4"的語法功能	20
	3.1.3 動詞的語義特徵對"給"的限制	22
	3.1.4 小結	26
3.	2 "給1"的語義和語法功能	27
	3.2.1 "給1"的語義特徵	27
	3.2.2 "給1"句式轉換之探討	29
	3.2.3 小結	30
3.	3 "給 2"的語義和語法功能	
	3.3.1 "給 2"的語義特徵	30
	3.3.2 "給 2"句式轉換之探討	31
	3.3.3 小結	33
3.	4 "給 3"的語義和語法功能 <u></u>	34

目錄

3.4.1 "給 3"的語義特徵	
3.4.2 "給3"句式轉換之探討	35
3.4.3 小結	
3.5 "給 4"的語義和語法功能	
3.5.1 "給4"的語義特徵	
3.5.2 "給4"句式轉換之探討	
3.5.3 小結	38
3.6 "給1"至"給4"的句式轉換現象分析	38
3.6.1 "給"的句式轉換受限之原因	
3. 6. 2 轉移物為實體或抽象	
 6.3 轉移物為實體或抽象之批判 	
3. 6. 4 轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步	45
3.6.5 小結	48
第四章 介詞 "給" 的習得調查及教學應用研究	52
4.1 華語學習者學習介詞"給"的調查研究	
4.1.1 調查目的	
4.1.2 調查對象 <mark></mark>	
4.1.3 調查方法	
4.1.4 / 調查結果	
4.1.4.1 介詞 "給"的語義功能	
4.1. <mark>4.2</mark> 介詞 <mark>"給"的語法結構</mark>	
4.1.4.3 泰國大學生使用介詞"給"的偏誤之因	
4.2 介詞"給"的教學應用及建議	64
4.2.1 教學語法理論架構	
4.2.2 "給"字的使用頻率	
4.2.3 "給"的語義和語法難度	
4.2.4 "給"的教學語法排序	
第五章 結論	77
5.1 研究結論	
5. 1. 1 介詞"給"的語義特徵	
5. 1. 2 介詞"給"的語法功能	
5. 1. 3 介詞 "給"的句式轉換受限之因	
5.2 介詞"給"的教學建議	
5. 2. 1 偏誤排序	
5. 2. 2 產生偏誤的主要原因	
5. 2. 3 介詞"給"的教學排序	
5.3 研究限制與省思	
參考文獻	
附錄	
附錄一:調查問卷	
附錄二:英文簡略版	
作者簡介	135

表目錄

表	目	錄
n.	ы	-

表 2-1	沈家煊對"給"有關的句式之分類表	
表 2-2	張伯江對"給"有關的句式之分類表	13
表 3-1	介詞"給"的語義分類表	
表 3-2	介詞"給"的相關句式分類	21
表 3-3	"V-給"的動詞搭配及句法功能之分類一覽表	24
表 3-4	"給1"至"給4"語義特徵和"S1、S2和S3"句式轉換一覽表	39
表 3-5	句式 S1、S2 和 S3 轉換受限原因之比較表	48
表 4-1	"給 1"之語義 <mark>偏誤情況</mark>	53
表 4-2	"給 2"之語義偏誤情況	54
表 4-3	"給 3"之 <mark>語義偏誤情況</mark>	55
表 4-4	"給 4"之 <mark>語義偏誤情況</mark>	. 56
表 4-5	介詞 "給1"至 "給4" 的語義功能偏誤情況之比較	. 57
表 4-6	介詞"給1"句式 S1 能轉換 S2 之偏誤情況	. 58
表 4-7	介詞"給 2"句式 S1 轉換 S2 之偏誤情況	. 59
表 4-8	"給 3" 句式 S1 不能轉換 S2 之偏誤情況	60
表 4-9	"給 4" 句式 S1 不能轉換成 S2 之偏誤情況	61
表 4-10	"給 1"至"給 4"語法結構句式 S1 轉換 S2 的分項偏誤之比較	62
表 4-11	"給"各項語義、語法點語料出現之頻率	67
表 4-12	介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之語義複雜度	71
表 4-13	介詞"給1"至"給4"之語義困難度排名	71
表 4-14	介詞 "給 1"至 "給 4" 之結構複雜度	72
表 4-15	介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之結構困難度排名	. 73
表 4-16	介詞"給"之系統內排序	75
表 5-1	"給1"至"給4"的語義特徵和S1、S2和S3句式轉換受限原因]
	之比較	79

圖目錄

	目錄		
圖	3-1	S1和S2句式轉換受限之分析圖	.49
圖	4-1	介詞 "給1"至 "給4" 的語義功能偏誤之排序	. 57
啚	4-2	"給1"至"給4"語法結構句式S1轉換成S2偏誤之排序	63
啚	4-3	介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 與 S1、S2、S3 句式語料出現頻率之排序	. 68
夁	4-4	介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 語義困難度之排序	. 72
啚	4-5	介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 結構困難度之排序	.73
圖	4-6	介詞 "給 1"至 "給 4"與 S1、S2 句式的語料出現頻率之排序	. 74
圕	4-7	介詞"給"之教學排序	75

引言

1.1 問題的提出

"我給你打電話"和"我打電話給你"這兩種漢語句式常在我們日常生活 中出現,乍聽之下這兩句話沒什麼不同,都說得通。對於在中國大陸的漢語母 語者而言,"我給你打電話"是較為熟悉的句式,而在臺灣的華語¹母語者則習 慣說"我打電話你"。Li and Thompson (1983)認為"我給他送了一本書"和 "我送了一本書給他"是兩種詞序不同但是語義等同的句式。

然而,以上的兩種句式真的是詞序不同而語義相同的轉換句式?除了地域 性差異的因素而發展出這兩種不同的句式之外,據筆者的初步觀察,現代漢語 "給"字是因為其表現出的不同語義²和所搭配的動詞³亦十分多樣,造成介詞 "給"所構成的句法形式有所差異,才會導致上述這兩種不同句式的存在。再 者,是否所有帶有介詞"給"的句式中的介賓結構和動賓結構的位置都能互相 轉換?若能轉換,如句(1a)和(1b)轉換後是否語義都相同呢?若句式不能 轉換,如朱德熙(1983)所言某些句子不能轉換,如句(2a)和(2b),其受 限為何?

(1a) 我給你買衣服。

(1b) 我買衣服給你。

¹ 目前學者一般認為"漢語"、"華語"和"中文"的內涵,基本上是一致的。因此,本文依照一般人的 習慣在提及來至臺灣的語料以及東南亞地區的學習者時用"華語"一詞。

² "給"字在下列例句中的語義和句法表現形式皆有所不同:"我寫一首詩給他"的"給"表"給予"之 義;我他 開門"的"給"表"幫忙"之義,而"我給你拜年"的"給"表"向"之義;有關其他學者 對"給"的分詳見本文第二章的第8,9頁。

³ 湯廷池(1982)將"給"所搭配的動詞範圍,至少區分為三大類。第一類動詞表"交接"動作的有: "寄、交、傳、遞、許、賣、輸、送、賞、還"等;第二類動詞表"消耗、索取"動作的有:"要、 吃、喝、抽、收、賺、贏、搶、偷、花、罰"等;第三類動詞表"詢問"動作的有:"問、講、說、 求、考、告訴、請教"等。

(2a) 我給你講個故事。

(2b)*我講個故事給你⁴。

1.2 研究目的

在現代漢語中, "給"字出現的頻率在中國大陸和臺灣地區分別高達 78 % 和 63 %⁵,所表示的語義及其所搭配的句式亦十分多樣, "給"既是動詞,也 是介詞,有時還是助詞。目前為止,雖然已有不少漢語語法學者研究 "給" 字,而文獻中對 "給"字的語法表現的研究成果也相當豐富,如:朱德熙 (1979)《漢語動詞 "給"相關的句法問題》、(1983)《包含動詞 "給"的 複雜句式》,李靜霞 (2003)《表處置的 "給"字句》,李曉琪 (1994)《介 詞 "給"、"為"、"替"兼論對外漢語虛詞教學》和丁仁、張英朗 (2004) 《漢語 "給"的語類及語法化》,但對於 "給"字的語義角色或認知上的探討 相對較少。此外,如上述所言朱德熙 (1983)認為句 (2b)中的動詞賓語 "故 事"不是實體,是不能給與的,所以 (2b)是不合語法的句子。但筆者對此看 法有些疑惑,因為如句例 (3)和 (4)所示:兩句中的 "眼色"和 "法子"並 非實體,但是它們卻是合語法的句子。

(3) 我遞個眼色給他。

(4) 我想個法子給你。

單就介詞"給"而言,其在漢語句式中所造成的多義現象,不僅成為華語 學習者的難點,而且有多年教學經驗的華語老師可能也無法明確而有系統地舉 出規則,告訴學生介詞"給"的每種句式的語義特徵和限制所在。如例句"你 要不要給我買手機",可能有以下兩種句義:

a. 你要不要買手機送我("給"表"給予")

b. 你要不要代替我 / 為我 / 幫我買手機 ("給"表"使惠")

⁴帶*號的句子為偏誤句。

⁵資料來源取自 2008 年 6 月 http://www.humanum.arts.cuhk.edu.hk "現代漢語常用字頻統計"。

鑒於上述的理由,引起筆者研究漢語介詞"給"的動機,加上"給"在現 代漢語中使用頻率相當高,促使筆者想一探究竟,尋找有助於華語教學的使用 規則。故本論文的主要研究目的有以下兩點:

- 1)從上述提出的介詞"給"在學習上的難點著手,以學者的說法為基礎,嘗試從語義和認知的觀點來探討並分析介詞"給"的語法結構和 語義特徵。
- 2)透過問卷調查進一步瞭解華語學習者使用介詞"給"時的實際掌握 形,整理出介詞"給"的用法,架構出適合華語學習者的分類和教學 排序並且提出教學建議,提供漢語教師在教學時作為參考,以便對華 語學習者在掌握介詞"給"字的用法上有所幫助。

1.3 研究範圍

現代漢語中的"給"可歸納出動詞、介詞和助詞三種用法,如下所述:

- 1) 動詞"給",例如:"給我一支筆"的"給"表示"給予",是 动詞:此外,呂叔湘(1999)亦將表"容許"的"給"歸為動詞, 其用法與"叫"和"讓"一樣,例如:"我的酒可是不給喝的"。
- 2)介詞"給",例如:"給我打一針"的"給"有"為"、"替"的意思:"給您道賀來了"的"給"有"向"、"朝"的意思:"他給人騙了"的"給"有"被"的意思:"他給你丟了臉"的"給" 表示"引進動作的受害者"以及"我給她買件新衣"的"給"表示 "引進事物的接收者"。
- 3)助詞"給",呂提出"給"尚有助詞的作用,用於主動句的"把"
 字句,例如:"他把衣服給晾乾了"和用於被動句的"給",例如:"衣服讓他給晾乾了"。

本文根據屈承熹(1999)對動詞和介詞的界定,由以下兩項主要的依據來 劃分:

1) 動詞後能帶有時態(aspect)標誌,如:"了"、"過",介詞則不

能, 如例句(6a)的"給"為動詞; 句(7a)的"給"為介詞,若帶 有"了"、"過",則產生病句(7b)。

- (6a) 我給你一筆錢。
- (6b) 我給過 / 了你一筆錢。
- (7a) 我給你找了這本書。
- (7b)*我給過 / 了你找這本書。
- 2)動詞可單獨充當謂語或答語,介詞則不能。如例句(8)的"給"為 動詞;例句(9)的"買"為動詞而"給"為介詞。
 - (8)問句:你給不給錢?答句:給。
 - (9) 問句: 你買不買給我?
 - 答句:不買。
 - 答句:*不給。

對助詞和介詞的界定,本文主要依據劉月華(2004)的說法:助詞只表示 語法意義,沒有實質的辭彙意義,所以在句子中可有可無。所以,我們在句子 中以助詞可省略但介詞不可省略來區分助詞和介詞,如:如例(10a)的"給" 為助詞;而句(11a)的"給"為介詞。

(10a) 衣服讓他給晾乾了。

- (10b) 衣服讓他晾乾了。
- (11a) 我給你買這本書。
- (11b)*我你買這本書。

本論文所討論的範圍只限定帶有介詞"給"字的句式,以及介賓結構和動 賓結構的位置是否能互相轉換,如句(1a)和(1b)所示。研究範圍包括介詞 "給"的語義功能,語法結構和教學排序。至於其他"給"的用法,如動詞 "給"(我給你一筆錢),"把"字句出現的助詞"給"(你把我給嚇了一 跳),表被動式的助詞"給"(我被大雨給困住了),以及表處置式的介詞 "給"(你給我閉嘴)皆非本論文的研究範圍。

1. 4 研究意義與作用

- 以"格語法"和認知語法中的"句式語法"理論為指導,探討帶介 "給"的不同語義特徵和語法結構中句式間轉換之受限原因。
- 2) 在全面梳理介詞"給"及相關句式的基礎上,為漢語教師提供華語學習者在使用介詞"給"時的偏誤類型和深層原因,以便幫助華語學習者確切地瞭解和正確地掌握介詞"給"的使用原則。

1.5 研究說明

本論文共分為五個章節。第一章為引言,說明本研究的動機與目的、研究 範圍以及內容架構。第二章為文獻探討,筆者首先整理較具代表性的漢語學者 對介詞"給"的傳統語義分類,以此為基礎,更進一步從句式結構和格語法的 角度來闡釋介詞"給"的語義和句法功能。因為這兩種理論皆以從說話者的意 念為出發點,而人際溝通是以意念的傳遞為主,句法只是意念的載體,因此從 語義的角度出發,較能補足僅從句法角度著手的侷限。

第三章為本文的分析架構,以上一章的文獻探討的結果為基礎,依據臺灣 中研院平衡語料庫和北京現代漢語料庫的語料將介詞"給"的傳統語義重新分 類為四大類: "給 1"至"給 4"。本文主要的分析理論是藉由"格語法" (Case Grammar)和認知語法理論"句式語法"(Construction Grammar)的觀 點來探討"給"的語義和句法功能,並釐清"給"的句式轉換之所以受限的原 因。筆者在此先對本研究的語料來源做一說明: 臺灣和大陸兩地由於地域區別 的因素,在語言的使用上不免產生某些差異,此地域性的差異也表現在帶有介 詞 "給"的句式上,就如前文所言,臺灣地區經常使用的句式是 "我打電話給 你"(介賓結構出現在句尾);但在大陸地區則是廣泛使用 "我給你打電話" (動賓結構出現在句尾)這種句式。筆者分別從臺灣中研院平衡語料庫和北京 現代漢語料庫的實際語料針對帶有介詞 "給"的上述兩種句式做統計,在臺灣 中研院平衡語料庫的例句中 "介賓結構出現在句尾"句式的出現率約為 60 %; 而北京現代漢語料庫的例句中 "介賓結構出現在句尾"句式的出現率只有 5%。因筆者欲探討帶有介詞 "給"不同句式轉換的情形,基於句式多樣性的 理由考量,本研究所採用的主要語料來源是臺灣中研院平衡語料庫。

本文的第四章為習得調查及教學應用,以本文所分介詞"給1"至 "給4"的語義類型為基礎,分別針對介詞"給"的語義和語法層面設計兩份 問卷,調查泰國的華語學習者對介詞"給"其不同語義和句法的實際使用情 形,藉由問卷調查的結果探討學習者在句法和語義上的學習難處,並根據介詞 "給"的語義複雜度和"給"的語法難度提出合適的教學排列順序。最後的第 五章為結論,包括總結本論文的研究內容,並說明研究過程中所產生的限制與 未盡之處。

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

第二章

文獻探討

本章擬就漢語語言學者對介詞"給"在語義分類、句式語法以及格語法等 各方面的研究成果,做一文獻回顧。筆者首先整理較具代表性的漢語學者對介 詞"給"的傳統語義分類之看法,再歸納幾位認知理論學者對於介詞"給"的 句式語法之研究成果,並且探討格語法理論之相關文獻。筆者認為唯有兼顧格 語法和句式語法的角度,觀察"給"各種語義和句式的對應關係,才能對 "給"做出較完整的闡釋。

2.1 關於"給"的傳統語義分類研究

以下本文就朱德熙(1982),呂叔湘(1983)和劉月華(2004)等三學者 對於介詞"給"的分析,做文獻回顧。

2.1.1 朱德熙

朱德熙在《漢語講義》中指出:介詞"給"主要有三種用法:

- 1) 在受事主語句裏引出施事,作用和"叫"、"讓"和"被"相似。例如:
 - 我給他騙了。
 - 衣服全給雨水打濕了。
- 2) 引出受益或受損的與事對象,例如:
 - 他常常給我開藥方。("我"受益)
 - 他給我算錯了。("我"受損)
- 3) 用於帶斥責口氣的祈使句中,例如:
 - 你給我去死。
 - 你給我滾。

2.1.2 呂叔湘

呂叔湘在《現代漢語八百詞》中將介詞"給"的主要用法分成以下五類:1)引進交付,傳遞的接受者:

• 老師給每個同學發了一份復習提綱。

2) 引進動作的受益者:

• 我給你當翻譯。

3) 引進動作的受害者:

- 對不起,這本書給你弄髒了。
- 4)朝、向、對:
 - 給老師行禮。
- 5) "給我"+動詞,用於命令句中,表強迫:
 - 你給我走開!
- 6) 表示被動,相當於"被":
 - 門給風吹開了。
- 2.1.3 劉月華

劉月華等在《實用現代漢語語法》中將"給"放在漢語介詞的用法裹介 紹, "給"的主要用法分類如下:

- 1) 介紹事物的接受者:
 - 妹妹,我也給你帶來了幾樣禮物,你來看看。
- 2) 介紹出動作行為的服務對象,相當於"為"、"替":
 - 老王,你給他解解心上的疙瘩吧。
- 3) 介紹出行為動作的對象,有"朝"、"向"、"對"的意思:
 - 奶媽,讓我先給你拜年吧。

4) 介紹動作行為的施事,相當於"被"的意思:

- 為什麼? 少年給老人問住了。
- 5) 在口語裏, "給+我"用於命令句中, 表強迫、命令:
 - 都別急著走,先給我到這邊來,還有裏邊的,都給我出來。

2.1.4 小結

綜合上述幾本語法書的分析,我們可以發現各位學者對介詞"給"的語義 分類及解釋的方法或有不同。基本上,呂叔湘和劉月華對介詞"給"的分類及 解釋比較相近而且區分較為詳細,但劉月華並沒有提及呂叔湘和朱德熙分類中 的"引進動作的受害者"這類的用法。

2. 2 "給"的句式語法研究

如前一章所言,現代漢語介詞"給"不僅所表示的語義十分多樣,而且 "給"在各句式所搭配之動詞範圍以及每個句式表達之語義之間亦有差異。因 此本小節主要探討認知語法理論"句式語法"⁶(Construction Grammar)的觀 點和認知理論三位學者,Goldberg (1995)、沈家煊(1999)與張伯江 (1999)對於介詞"給"相關的句式之看法。

2. 2. 1 Goldberg

句式語法的思想最早是由格語法的創始者Fillmore(1990)提出來的,後經 Adele E. Goldberg(1995)和 Paul Kay(1995)等學者的研究而愈見深入,其中 以Goldberg 的研究成果最引人注意。Goldberg 所說的句式範圍比較廣,不僅包 括一般所說的句式,也包括詞、成語、複合詞等。句式語法理論的主要概念如 下所述:句式表示與人類經驗有關的重要情景,是語言系統中的基本單位;語 法有生成性,但非轉換的,一個個的語法格式,亦即句式。除了包含在語法格 式即句式之內的組成分以及它們之間的結構關係外,句式本身也具有意義,不

⁶ "Construction Grammar" 亦被譯為"構式語法"。

同的句式有不同的句式意義。任何一個句式都是形式和意義的對應體,僅僅對 與句式有關的動詞意義進行解讀是遠遠不夠的,需要參照與詞條相聯的框架語 義知識。(Goldberg 1995)

句式有獨立的語義,因此一個句子的意義,並不能只根據組成句子的詞語 的意義、詞語之間的結構關係或另外的先前已有的句式所能推知,句式本身也 表示獨立的意義,並將影響句子的意思。Goldberg(1995)曾設計過"John X Mary something"的測試框架,問受試者該結構中的 X 可能是什麼樣動詞,結 果是 60 % 的受試者認為該句法框架中的 X 可能是"give"意義的動詞。但實際 語料庫的統計資料卻顯示"make"的使用率比"give"來得高。因此 Goldberg 推論出大多數人把 X 理解成"give",並不是詞語使用頻率的原因,很可能是 受到該雙賓結構句式的影響,從而部分支援了"句式對動詞的意義和用法有影 響"的理論假設。

Goldberg (1995) 對"句式"的定義為:假設 C 是一 個獨立的句式,當 且僅當 C 是一個形式和意義的對應體,而無論是形式或意義的某些特徵,都不 能完全從 C 這個構式的組成成分或另外的先前已有的構式推知。換句話說,語 句的意義是由辭彙意義和語法構式相互作用生成的。

由於雙賓語結構的基本認知是"有意的給予性轉移"(Ahrens 1995),而 "給予"是該結構的核心語義,一旦句式中出現其他動詞,該結構也多少會向 這"非給"動詞分派"給"的意義。在下面的例句中,所用的非"給"類動 詞,在英語中原先並沒有"給"的意思,例如"knit"。但當這些動詞進入這個 句式後,構成了含有"接受者"的句法表徵結構,這說明,"轉移給"的過程 或事件,使得動作蘊含了結果。

- knit her a sweater (給她打一件毛衣)
- pour me a drink (給我倒一杯飲料)
- sing us a song (給我們唱一首歌)
- bake him a cake (給他烤一塊餅)

由上述的例句中可得知: 在英語中雙賓語結構的"傳遞"和"給"的意義 是隱性的、默認的或潛藏的,即通過動作的實施,把結果隱含地"給"了接受 者或間接賓語。 然而在漢語譯文中, "給"的概念會顯性地表現出來,漢語並 沒有"打她一件毛線衣"的說法。因為在漢語語法系統裹除雙賓語結構以外, 其他表示給予行為的表達形式都要借助於介詞"給"字。

根據句式語法理論對句式的看法: "一個句子的意義,並不能只根據組成 句子的詞語的意義、詞語之間的結構關係或另外的先前已有的句式所能推知, 句式本身也表示獨立的意義"。因此,基於句式語法理論的概念,我們也同意 將帶有介詞"給"所表現出的整體句式之基本語義定義為"有意的給予性轉 移"。

2. 2. 2 沈家煊(1999)

沈家煊(1999)指出,不同的詞類序列代表不同的句式,一個句式是一個 "完形"(Gestalt),即一個整體結構。只有把握句式的整體意義,才能解釋 許多分詞類未能解決的語法現象,才能對許多對應的語法現象做出相應的概 括。沈家煊以義層面來討論"給"有關的句式,筆者將沈對"給"的說明加以 整理,如下表 2-1 所示:

句式與例句	句式意義
S1: S(施事者)+給+X(惠予目標)+V+O	對某惠予目標發生某動作
例句(12)我給你買了一所房子。	0.010000
S2: S(施事者)+V+O+給+X(終點)	惠予事物轉移並達到終點, 轉移
例句(13)我買了一所房子給你。	和達到是兩個分離的過程
S3: S(施事者)+V+給+X(終點)+O	惠予事物轉移並達到終點,轉移
例句(14)我買給你一所房子。	和達到是一個統一過程

表格 2-1: 沈家煊對"給"有關的句式之分類表

沈藉由認知語法的"順序原則"來說明以上句式 S1、S2 和 S3 的整體意義。沈家煊對(1999: 97)"順序原則"的定義如下:



如果 B 在 A 之後, C 在 B 之後, 那麼 A、B、C 是一個列, 而且是一個有 序的列。在空間域是一個序列, 在時間域和其他的概念域也是個序列, 例如我 在畫這個圖時, 順序是先畫 A, 其次 B, 最後 C。他認為"給"在動詞前表示 預定的目標(goal); 而在動詞後表示達到的終點(destination), 因為目標總 是在行動前先行設定, 理應位於動詞前; 而終點總是在動作之後才能達到, 理 應位於動詞之後。此一觀點, 與戴浩一(1988)的時間順序原則(PTS)一 致, 一個介詞不同位置產生是因受到時間順序的制約。戴提出的時間順序規 律, 即漢語的相對詞序反映了在人的理性世界中事情發生的時間順序。即, 是 先發生的事情出現在句子的前邊,後發生的事情出現在後邊。

根據沈的說法,S1:S+給+X+V+O表動作的發生有一定的目標,所以 此句式可解釋"為一預定目標做了一件事",句式的意義表示"施事者對某受 惠目標發生某動",例句(12)"我給你買了一所房子"可解釋為"我施行了 幫你買房子的動作",句中並無清楚地指出是"我"出錢還是"你"出錢。至 於動作的受惠目標是否是事物轉移的終點,即,"你"是否為"房子"的接收 者,句式的本身並沒有規定,而是由其他因素所決定。究竟是由哪些其他因素 所決定?沈並無提出更一步的說明。

沈亦指出 S2: S+V+O+給+X和 S3: S+V+給+X+O 兩句式的意義為 "惠予事物轉移並達到終點",沈用"相鄰原則"來說明這兩個句式的差異。 沈家煊(1999: 97)對"相鄰原則"的定義為:相鄰的兩個成分傾向於組成一 個單位。具體的距離是這樣,抽象的距離也是這樣:小王和他媽媽之間的距離 要比小王和他同事間的距離近,小王和他媽媽因此是"一"家人。沈由此理論 指出例句(13)"我買了一所房子給你"表示對惠予事物轉移並達到終點,轉 移和達到兩個分離的過程,因為"買"和"給你"並未緊鄰,中間還隔著受事 賓"一所房子"。因此,"一所房子"和"你"之間,語義上不一定已產生領 有關係。而例句(14)也表示對惠予事物轉移並達到終點,但轉移和達到是個統一的過程,因為"買"和"給你"緊鄰,形成複合動詞"買給"。因此, "一所房子"和"你"緊挨著,語義上已產生領有關係。沈所提出的"相鄰原 則"說明了"給"字句式中的不同語序,可以反映出給予物和接受者之間是否 已產生領有關係。

2. 2. 3 張伯江(1999)

張伯江(1999)指出,從現實語料統計中的優勢分佈,到兒童語言的優先 習得,乃至歷史語法的報告,都表明"給"意義是雙及物句式的基本語義。張 將"雙賓語結構"句式的說法以"雙及物"句式的術語來代替,他指出兩者有 實質的區別: "雙賓語結構"是用分解句式的視點出發,而"雙及物"則是以 體現整體句式的視點為主。他認為與"給"有關的句式,至少可概括為以下三 種:如表格 2-2所示:

表格 2-2: 張伯江對"給"有關的句式之分類表

	句式意義
a: A(施事)+給+R(接受者)+V+P(惠予事物)	轉移過程已完成,惠予事
例句(15)*老李給我送了一本書。	物理應屬於接受者,故此
A start was	句式不能成立
b:A(施事)+V+P(惠予事物)+給+R(接受者)	轉移過程未完成,惠予事
例句(16)老李送了一本書給我。	物尚未完全屬於接受者
c: A(施事)+V+給+R(接受者)+P(惠予事物)	轉移過程已完成,惠予事
例句(17) 老李送給我一本書。	物完全屬於接受者

張提出雙及物的句式意義在於領屬關係的轉移過程: 給予之前, 受事為施 事所領有; 給予之後, 受事為接受者所領有。即在轉移前, 惠予事物屬於施 事, 在轉移後, 惠予事物屬於接受對象。根據張的說法, 句式 a 例句(15) "老李給我送了一本書"為病句, 因為不能用 "給"把接受者移到動詞前。在 例句(15)中的接受者 "我"的位置從原本鄰近"一本書"的位置移至動詞 "送"之前, 違反了"相鄰原則"而形成病句。 筆者注意到上述張所舉出的三種句式和上述沈所提出的三種句式是完全一樣的。但有關"老李給我送了一本書"的句式(即是沈所提的 S1: S + 給 + X + V + O), 張對沈所提出的"對某受惠目標發生某動作"句式意義的看法並不一致。

2.2.4 小結

綜上所述,句式語法認為介詞"給"所組成的句式之整體意義為"所有權 的轉移"。而由"相鄰原則"和"順序原則"可說明"給"所組成的句式中介 賓結構和動賓結構的位置不能轉換的原因,是因為如沈和張指出的"所有權的 轉移,是不可分離"。此一見解是傳統語法所無法解釋的,也是認知語法對 "給"相關句式的貢獻。

2.3 "給"的格語法研究

語言符號分為三個平面:句法、語義、語用,三個平面各有各的研究重點。句法平面著重研究語言符號與語言符號之間的關係;語義平面著重研究語言符號與所指事物之間的關係;語用平面著重研究語言符號與使用者之間的關係。而格語法主要是研究句子的語義平面。

2. 3. 1 Fillmore

格語法(Case Grammar)是美國語言學家 CJ Fillmore(1971)所提出一種著 重探討句法結構與語義之間關係的語法理論和語義學理論。Fillmore 指出,句 子在基礎結構中包含一個動詞或幾個名詞短語,每一個名詞短語以一定的格關 係和動詞發生語義關係。語義角色概念的產生及運用反映了語言學家對句法結 構與語義角色關係的關注。Fillmore 解釋他的語義格是深層結構(deep structure)中的語義現象,每一個名詞片語在深層結構中都擔任一定的"格角 色"(case role),這些"格"經過一定的線性化過程後,才會在句型的表面 結構體現出主語、賓語等不同的功能。所以格語法是動詞中心論,句子 S (sentence)由一個動詞 V 及與其相關的多個 "格" (case)構成,透過 "格"可將名詞和介詞的功能標注出來。

2.3.2 鄧守信

研究現代漢語的學者在格語法理論引入後,根據漢語的語義特徵和作用, 進行範疇分類,再將漢語的詞語語義和其語法表現結合起來,應用在漢語的語 法分析上。由於不同的學者對於現代漢語中所設立的論元角色的數目和其定義 相差頗大,我們以鄧守信的論點作為本文的語法分析指標。

鄧守信(1975)參照 Fillmore、Halliday、Chafe 的理論研究漢語的格關 係,特別著重於語義格與語法兩個層次的相互關係。他提出"動、名關係的層 次性"(Hierarchy of Verb-Noun Relations),將格範疇分為"核心格" (transitivity roles)和"周圍格"(circumstantial case)兩組:

A "核心格" (transitivity roles) 施事 (agent)、受事 (patient)、範圍 (range)、目標 (recipient)

B "周圍格" (circumstantial case)
 工具 (instrument)、方位 (locative)、起點 (source)、終點
 (goal)、受惠 (benefactive)、夥伴 (comitative)

鄧(1975)表示: A 組範疇的選擇從屬於動詞的論元結構,但 B 組範疇不 是選擇而是由動詞特徵指明的。A 組範疇能確定"合格性"(wellformedness);而 B 組範疇不能,因為後者在多數情況下是任選(optional)。 鄧(1975)將該兩組與動詞的關係分別叫做:及物性關係(transitivity relations)和狀語性關係(circumstantial relations),前者以動詞為中心,不受 介詞支配;後者則受介詞支配,即,這些深層格在表層結構中帶有介詞做標 記。 此外,鄧⁷(2005)對"終點格"與"受惠格"的解釋分別如下:如果一個 由介詞引導的論元在連謂結構是中動作行為移位後所到達的點,那這個論元的 角色就是"終點格"(goal),其在句子的表層結構中需要藉由介詞如 "到"、"給"和"往"等做標記,鄧對終點格的定義為"某個個體經歷移位 後所到達的點"。如果一個由介詞引導的論元在連謂結構中是動作的受益對 象,那麼這個論元的角色就是"受惠格"(benefactive)⁸。他表示受惠格有三 項語義特徵,即,具有"為了......的利益"的語義,"代替"(甲代替乙做了 原本乙該做的事)的語義和"從句子中主語所實施的動作過程中得到利益"的 語義。

2.3.3 湯廷池

湯廷池(1982)根據間接賓語之前能否加介詞,以及直接、間接賓語的位 置能否對調,對"給"字構成的句式進行了討論。湯認為漢語的"給"是異義 詞(homophone),可進一步區分為"對象標記"(goal-marker)的"給" (to)和"施惠標記"(benefactive-marker)的"給"(for the benefit of)。

(16a) 我買一件大衣給他。

(16b) 我買給他一件大衣。

(17a) 我給他買一件大衣。

(17b) 我替他買一件大衣。

湯解釋 (16a)和 (16b) 句中的"給"都是"對象標記" (goalmarker),所以這兩個句子是同義。而 (17a)的"給"則是"施惠標記" (benefactive-marker),意思和句子 (17b)相同。

⁷ 鄧守信 2005 年在泰國朱大講授"現代漢語語法結構分析"之教學內容。

⁸ 鄧守信對"受惠"的定義是"格"而非意義上的受惠,指原本甲該做的事卻由乙代替。而此受惠和沈 所提的"受惠目標"不同,沈所指的應該為 goal "既定目標"。

根據湯對"給"之語義分類,陳俊光(2007)提出"給"亦有另一種可能 的解讀,即可將"給"視為一種施惠標記,等同"替"或"幫",表示幫忙跑 腿的意思,而非"贈予"的終點標記,因此上述的例句(15)"老李給我送了 一本書"可以是合法的句子,因其並無違背相鄰原則。張伯江之所以視其為病 句,或許是因為他並未從這個角度考慮。

2.3.4 小結

綜合上述的文獻探討,從格語法的角度得知"給"乃有兩種語義格, 一為"施惠格",另一為"終點格",這是認知語法所未予以區分之處。因 此,筆者認為唯有兼顧格語法和句式語法的角度,觀察各語義和句式的對應關 係,才能對"給"做較完整的闡釋。

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

第三章

介詞"給"的語義功能和語法結構分析

此章為本文的分析架構,共有六個小節:第一小節說明介詞"給"的語義 分類、句法功能和其所搭配的動詞(動詞組)之語義特徵和限制,做為本文分 析的理論根據。第二至第五小節,按照介詞"給 1"、"給 2"、"給 3"和 "給 4"的分類順序,嘗試從漢語格語法(Case Grammar)和認知句式語法的 角度探討介詞"給"的不同語義特徵和語法功能,並且小結介詞"給 1"至 "給 4"在 S1、S2、S3 三種句式間的轉換現象。最後一小節主要是探討介詞 "給"句式轉換受限的原因,筆者分別就"轉移物為實體或抽象"和"轉移物 轉移和達到過程為同步或非同步"這兩個假設因素,做進一步的推論和分析。

3.1 " 給 1" 至 " 給 4" 的語義分類和語法功能

本文認為,分析介詞"給"字的用法,應該同時從語義和語法兩方面來探 討。因為同一個句式中的介詞"給",可能由於句中動詞的語義特徵不同,而 產生不同的語義功能,如下面例句(18)中的介詞"給"會因動詞"看"的意 思表"看守"而產生"幫忙"的語義,如例句(18a)所示;但當動詞"看"表 示"參觀"的意思時介詞"給"的語義就變成了"允許",如例句(18b)所 示。相對地,即便是同一個語義功能的介詞"給",也可具有不同的句法形 式,如例句(19a)和(19b)所示,兩種句式中的介詞"給"均表示"贈予" 的意思。筆者認為,華語學習者對介詞"給"字最難掌握之處,應該是此多種 語義和句法多重對應的複雜性。

(18) 我給他看房子。

- (18a)我幫忙他看守房子。
- (18b) 我允許他參觀房子。
- (19a) 我給他買一件禮物。
- (19b) 我買一件禮物給他。

本章節以上一章的文獻探討的結果為基礎。首先,在語義層面方面根據臺 灣中研院平衡語料庫和北京現代漢語料庫提供的語料,將介詞"給"的傳統語 義功能重新分類為四大類。其次,在語法方面,歸納前輩學者所提出與介詞 "給"相關的三種基本句式後,加以整理擴展句式意義。最後討論介詞"給" 在相關的三種句式中所搭配的動詞(動詞組)其語義特徵,以便作為本章將要 探討的介詞"給1"至"給4"其語義分類和句法功能之理論依據。

3. 1. 1 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 的語義分類

根據前一章的文獻探討及實際語料⁹中所獲得的資料,筆者將"給"的語義 重新整理後區分為以下四類,如下頁表 3-1 所示。本文對"給"的語義分類與 上一章學者的傳統語義分類不同處在於:筆者認為,因為介詞"給"的主要作 用是引出與動作相關的事件或對象,因此對介詞"給"的語義應由"給"對受 事所引介出的不同的事物或動作行為來區別分類,此種方法分類更能清楚地表 現出"給"的不同語義特徵。



⁹ 語料來源為臺灣中央研究院平衡語料庫和北京大學漢語語言學研究中心現代漢語料庫。

分類	功能	受事	例句
給1	引介某實體事物的接收對象,表	受物者	(a) 我給你買一雙新鞋。
	"給予"之義。		(b) 老闆給每位員工發年終
			獎金。
給2	引介出動作牽涉的對象或抽象事	動作接收者	(c) 她給大家帶來了一個好
10	物接收對象,表"向"、		消息。
	"對"、"跟"之義。	112	(d)我給你講個笑話。
給3	引介某獲益動作行為或事件的受	受惠者	(e) 我給你打聽打聽這件
and the second s	益對象,表"為 <mark>"、"替</mark> "、		事。
	"幫"之義。		(f) 媽媽退休後,給女兒帶
			孩子。
給4	引介某虧損動作行為或事件的受	受損者	(g)是我不小心,給你弄丟
	害對象,相當於"害"之義。		了機票。
			(f) 對不起,我給你砸了信
			聲。

表 3-1: 介詞"給"的語義分類表

上表中 "給 1"的例句(a)以及例句(b)中的"你"和"員工"分別是 實體事物"一雙新鞋"和"年終獎金"的接收對象; "給 2"的例句(c)以及 例句(d)中的"大家"和"你"分別是抽象事物"一個好消息"和"笑話"接 收對象; "給 3"的例句(e)以及例句(f)中的"你"和"女兒"分別是事件 "打聽這件事"和"帶孩子"的受益對象。"給 4"的例句(g)以及例句(f) 中的"你"是損害事件"弄丟了機票"和"砸了信譽"的受害對象。

3. 1. 2 "給 1"至 "給 4"的語法功能

在介詞"給"的句法上之分類,筆者將上一章沈家煊和張伯江所提出 "給"的三種基本句式重新歸納成表 3-2 如下所示:句式中的 S 指句子的主 語,V 指句子的謂語,X 指句子的介詞賓語,O 指句子的動詞賓語。表中的句 式意義,沈原本的說法為"惠予事物的所有權未轉移或已轉移"和"惠於事物 轉移並達到終點的過程分離或統一",筆者為了讓學習者較易理解此概念,本 文中以 "擁有權"取代原本"所有權"的說法,並且以 "轉移的發生和完成時間同步(synchronous)或非同步"來代替原本的 "惠予事物轉移並達到終點的過程分離或統一"。

句式	例句	分佈	句式意義
S1: S-給-X-V-O	我給你買一隻新手機。	"給"位於動詞前	擁有權未轉移
S2: S-V-O-給-X	我買一隻新手機給你。	"給"位於動詞後	擁 有 權 已 轉 移, 轉移的發 生和完成時間 非同步
S3: S - V- 給- X - O	我買給你一隻新手機。	"給"位於動詞後 並與動詞緊鄰	 擁 有 權 已 轉 移,轉移的發 生和完成時間 同步

表 3-2: 介詞 "給"的相關句式分類

根據上表 3-2 介詞"給"的相關句式分類表, "S3: S-V-給-X-O" 句中"給"的位置分佈是位於動詞後,而且與動詞緊鄰。筆者注意到, "給" 在 S3 句式中會受限於所搭配的動詞(動詞組)本身所具有的語義特徵。

陸儉明(2004)指出"語義特徵"這個概念是從語義學借用來的,指某個 詞語在意義上所具有的特點。語法研究中借用"語義特徵"這個概念有兩個主 要的目的:第一,用以解釋造成同形多義句法格式的原因;第二,用以說明在 某個句法格式中,為什麼同是動詞或同是名詞,有的能進入該格式,有的就不 能進入該格式。而這些語詞的語義特徵都是結合具體的語法格式概括得到的, 而非單純從詞義的角度分析得到。例如: "寫"離開具體句式,並無具有[+ 給 予]的語義特徵,只有在考察"我寫給你一封信"這一句式並且瞭解進入這一句 式的動詞都含有"給予"的語義特徵之後, "寫"的語義特徵才能加以確定。 陸亦提出"給"的相關句式裏最關鍵的是動詞,各句式之語法意義的差別就是 由動詞決定的;而動詞的不同語義又是由其不同的語義特徵所決定。筆者認為 此現象也是華語外籍學習者在使用介詞"給"句式時難以掌握之處,本文將在 下面討論"給"在S3句式中所搭配的動詞(動詞組)其語義特徵和受限之因。 3.1.3 動詞的語義特徵對"給"的限制

在探討"給"所搭配的動詞(動詞組)其語義特徵之前,首先我們要釐清 "V-給"結構的"給"究竟是複合動詞(compound verb) 中的動補成分還是 介詞?

沈家煊(1999)指出"我買給你一所房子"的"買給",因為"買"和 "給你"緊鄰而形成複合動詞(compound verb)"買給",故"給"可輕讀。 劉月華等(2004)將"V-給"歸納為結果補語中的一個。但是根據屈承熹 (1999)的觀點,動補結構的語法及語義特徵有以下兩點:

- 1)動補結構通常在結構上都可以插入"得"或"不",如:動補結構 "進去"可以插入"得"或"不"成為"進得去"和"進不去"。而 我們發現,在"V-給"的中間是無法插進"得"或"不"的,如例句 (20b)和(20c)所示;
 - (20a) 我買給你一隻新手機。
 - (20b)*我買得給你一隻新手機。
 - (20c)*我買不給你一隻新手機。
- 2)動補結構的語義一般表示動詞和其動作行為所產生的結果,並明顯遵 循時間順序原則,如:"看見"、"分開"和"打破",就"打破" 一詞來看,要先實現"打"的動作才會出現"破"的結果。而例句中 (20a)中"買給"並沒有表達出"給"為結果事件的概念。所以,鑒 於上述的理由,筆者推論"V-給"並非動補結構。

除此之外,雙音節動詞後面帶有"給"字如:"託付給"、"轉送給"、 "介紹給"、"推薦給"、"分配給"、"交還給"和"退換給"等,很難將 其看作是兩個動詞結合而成的複合動詞,因為在 S3 句式中"給"字都能被省 略,本文因此確定"V-給"不是一個複合動詞。 趙元任 (1968) 將 "V-給"分析為介詞。他在"介-賓式片語的用法" 中表示: "到"、"給"和"在"為"介-賓式片語"作補語,例如: "走到 家裏"、"借給你錢"和"坐在椅子上"等。

 綜歸以上的說法,我們同意"V−給"結構中的"給"是介詞而不是複合 動詞(compound verb)中的動補成分。筆者將在下文中進一步說明有關"給" 所搭配的動詞(動詞組)的語義特徵和受限現象。

朱德熙(1979)提出能與"給"搭配的動詞(動詞組)有下列所示: 送、賣、還、遞、付、賞、獎、嫁、交、讓、教、分、陪、退、輸、補、 發、撥、贈、賜、傳、獻、捎、寄、匯、留、扔、踢、找(錢)、塞 (給我一塊糖)、寫(信)、打(電話)、許(給他一個女兒)、揀 (菜)、借、租、換、介紹、推薦、分配、遺傳、傳染、轉交、移交、交 還、歸還、退換、贈送、轉送、轉賣。

^筆者參考湯廷池(1982)對雙賓動詞的分類,將從上述所列出的動詞(動詞組)重新劃分為"向內動詞"(inward verb)、"向外動詞"(outward verb)和"雙向動詞"並且另外加入"表達類動詞¹⁰",歸納整理為下表 3-3: "V 一給"的動詞搭配及句法功能之分類。

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

¹⁰ 張伯江(1999)稱為"傳達資訊類",這些動詞有:報告、答覆、告訴、交代、教、通知等。這類動詞 就是把物質空間的給予過程投射到話語空間的現象。由於給予物不是具體的物質,所以人們一般不用 "AVP給 R",例如: *我告訴一件事情給他。

(▼ 保記衣小: 肥進八該可式; ▲ 保記衣小: 小能進八該可式;			汉可 式; · 你们我小: 他口裡八	成可同日于哦?
功能	向內動詞	向外動詞	雙向動詞	表達類動詞
	具有將賓語向內移位的語	具有將賓語向外移位的語義	具有將賓語向內和向外移位	具有將傳遞或詢問訊息的
	義功能,表示主語為消	功能,表示主語為給予、付	的語義功能,當表示向内的	動作行為位移到話語空間
語義特徵	耗、索取、侵佔、奪取等	出、傳送等動作行為的起點	動作行為時,主語為終點;	的語義功能
A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	動作行為的終點/接收者		而表示向外的動作行為時,	
			主語為起點	
	贏、收、吃、喝、抽、	寄、交、傳、遞、許、賣、	借、拿、買、租、分、賠	問、講、說、求、考、告
	偷、搶、要、花、罰、	輸、 <mark>送、賞、還、</mark> 留、付、		訴、請教、表示、描述、
	騙、欠、討、占、用	扔、踢、 <mark>丟、推、嫁、</mark> 發、		交代、通知、答復、提
動詞聚合		撥、帶、塞、找錢、託付、		醒、報告、打聽
		寫信、轉賣、轉送、介紹、		
		推薦、分配、遺傳、傳染、		
		轉交、移交、交還、歸還、		
		退換、贈送、打電話		
	例)我贏了他錢。	例)*我寄他信。	例)我借了他錢。	例)我問你問題。
雙賓句式	→"我"是錢的接收者。	→"他"是信的接收者。	→"他"是錢的接收者。	→"我"是問題答案的接
	จุฬา	ลงกรณ์มหาว	→"我"是錢的接收者。	收者。

表 3-3: "V-給"的動詞搭配及句法功能之分類一覽表 ("✔"標記表示,能進入該句式, "¥"標記表示,不能進入該句式, "?"標記表示,能否進入該句尚有爭議)

,

24

24

續接上表

	\checkmark	1	\checkmark	?
	S1: S-給-X-V-O	S1: S-給-X-V-O	S1: S-給-X-V-O	S1: S-給-X-V-O
	例)我給他贏了錢。	例)我給他寄了信。	例)我給他借了錢。	例)?我給你問問題。
	→ 我幫他贏了錢,	→ 我寄了信給他,	→ 我替他從別處借了錢,	→ 我讓/被你問問題,
	"他"是錢的接收者。	"他"是信的接收者。	"他"是錢的接收者。	"你"是問題答案的接
由 4 6人 7 七 期		→ 我幫他寄了信給別人,		收者。
央 新 有關 的句式		"他"不是信的接收者。		
	~	S Marcina A	1	×
	S2: S-V-O-給-X	S2: S - V- O- 給- X	S2: S-V-O-給-X	S2: S - V- O- 給- X
	例)我贏了錢給他。	例)我寄了信給他。	例)我借了錢給他。	例)*我問問題給你。
	→"他"是錢的接收	→"他"是信的接收者。	→他從我這借了錢,	
	者。	2	"他"是錢的接收者。	
	×	1		×
A PARTY CAPTOR	S3: S-V-給-X-O	S3: S-V-給-X-O	S3: S - V- 給- X- O	S3: S-V-給-X-O
	例)*我贏給他錢了。	例)我寄給他信了。	例)我借給了他錢。	例)*我問給你問題。
	'si	→"他"是信的接收者。	→ 他從我這借了錢,	
	จหา	ลงกรณ์มหา	"他"是錢的接收者。	

由上表 3-3: "V-給"的動詞搭配其句法功能之分類一覽表中得知: "向內動詞"能進入 S1 和 S2 句式,只有一種語義,但是句中的主語不是動作 行為的終點,並且這類動詞不能進入 S3 句式; "向外動詞"能進入 S1 句式, 然而其句式的語義會因"給"所搭配的動詞其方向性(向外)而使句子產生歧 義,這類動詞也能夠進入 S2 和 S3 兩種句式,只有一種語義; "雙向動詞"皆 能進入 S1、S2 和 S3 句式,都只有一種語義; "表達類動詞"這類動詞能進入 S1 句式時,但句子產生爭議,這類動詞既不能進入 S2 句式亦不能進入 S3 句 式。所以"給"在 S3 句式中所搭配的動詞(動詞組)範圍會受限於動詞(動詞 組)本身所具有的語義特徵,而影響介詞"給"是否能進入 S3 句式。

3.1.4 小結

在上述的小節中,筆者將介詞"給"的傳統語義功能重新分為四大類: "給1"為引介某實體事物的接收對象,表"給予"之義; "給2"為引介出動 作牽涉的對象或抽象事物接收對象,表"向"、"對"、"跟"之義; "給 3"為引介某獲益動作行為或事件的受益對象,表"為"、"替"、"幫"之 義; "給4"為引介某虧損動作行為或事件的受害對象,相當於"害"之義。

在語法方面, 筆者將前輩學者所提出的與介詞"給"相關的三種基本句式, 即"S1: S-給-X-V-O"、"S2: S-V-O-給-X"和"S3: S-V-給-X-O"等, 加以整理並且擴展句式意義分別如下: S1為"惠予事物的擁有權未轉 移"、S2為"惠予事物的擁有權已轉移, 轉移的發生和完成時間非同步"以及 S3為"惠予事物的擁有權已轉移, 轉移的發生和完成時間同步"。

綜合上面所討論的介詞"給"在相關的三種句式中所搭配的動詞(動詞 組)其語義特徵,筆者認為介詞"給"在其中的"S3:S-V-給-X-O"句式 中的所搭配動詞(動詞組)"V-給",會因為受限於動詞本身的語義特徵而 影響到介詞"給"是否能進入S3句式,像"向內動詞"和"表達類動詞"即不 能與"給"搭配成"V-給"的用法而無法進入S3句式中;相對的,"雙向動

26

詞"和"向外動詞"因能與"給"搭配成"V-給"的"介-賓式片語"的用 法而進入 S3 句式中。

3.2 "給1"的語義和語法功能

3. 2. 1 "給1"的語義特徵

由上一節的所歸納出"給"的語義分類,我們認為"給1"主要的語義特徵 "為引介某實體事物的接收對象,表給予義"。筆者從中央平衡語料庫 1200 條 "給"的語料中,收集到 270 條"給1"的用法,其中 10 個例句如下所示¹¹:

(21)由於上級的授權,我推薦四位專家給文化中心。

(22) 有任何疑問, 請寄电子邮件給我們。

(23) 自爆炸發生以來,他每天給/幫救災人員送食物。

(24) 貴公司應該更迅速地提供新產品給顧客。

(25)房價太高,兒女們買不起,她計畫先給/幫唯一的兒子買一棟房子。

(26) 耶誕節快到了, 聖誕老人忙著給/幫孩子們發禮物。

(27) 趕明兒我給/幫你縫一只好看的荷包讓你帶走。

(28)回到灶下,他遞了一碗混著奶油的熱茶給她。

(29) 減肥廣告表面上是想賣商品給女性, 實際上卻是為討好男人。

(30)這場車禍讓他失去一條腿,所以他花了一個星期給/幫自己做了個 木制義肢。

從上述的例句中,我們發現有些例句中的"給"亦可以用"為"、"幫" 和"替"來代替,並可能產生歧義,如例句(23),(25),(26),(27) 和(30)。對於句子所出現的歧義問題,即句子中的"給"所以引介的究竟是 "受物者"還是"受惠者",本文主要以格語法做分類,因此本節首先要釐清 "給 1"的語義標記為"終點格(goal)"還是"受惠格(benefactive)",或

¹¹ 例句中的"給/"後另一個介詞"幫"並非出現在原本的語料中,為筆者個人所加以標示出"給"與 "幫"同義。
是兩者皆可。此問題涉及到"給 1"所引介的介詞賓語之語義角色(thematic roles),鄧守信(1983)指出"受惠格"具有"代替"和"為了……的利益" 的語義特徵;而"終點格"的定義為"某個個體經歷移位後所到達的地點"。 筆者同時以張伯江(1999)提出的"漢語雙及物式中的給予物,可以是空間領 域的實體,也可以是非空間領域的實體,還可以是話語領域的實體"的觀點為 基礎,將鄧守信"終點格"定義擴展為"施事者發出的動作行為並使某物移位 之所既定的點"。我們認為終點格的"給"其引介的"給予事物"不僅是空間 領域的實體,也可以是非空間領域的動作行為,甚至還可延伸至話語領域的抽 象訊息。

"給 1"的語義為"引介某實體事物的接受者",我們觀察上述的十個例 句,發現皆可用"施事者以受物者(介詞賓語)為目標對象施行某一事件"的 說法來解釋。若按照我們對終點格的定義,句子中為"受物者"(介詞賓語) 即是"施事者發出動作行為並使某物移位至既定的點",筆者由此推論"給 1"的語義標記為"終點格"。我們以例句(23)來說明:"自爆炸發生以來, 他每天給救災人員送食物"中的"救災人員"是"他"(施事者)施行"送食 物"這一動作的終點地。因此,句中"給"所引介的介詞賓語為"受物者"而 非一定是"受惠者",所以句子中的"給"為終點格。

回溯上段所提及的例句(23)、(25)、(26)、(27)和(30)中的 "給"是否能在擔任"終點格"的同時也能充當"受惠格"的問題。根據 Fillmore (1971:8-41)的"一句一例原則" (one-instance-per-clause principle)的設 定:一個句中的任何一種格只能由一個名詞短語充當,本文認為上述句中 "給"的語義標記皆定位為"終點格",而非"受惠格",更能概括此種句式 的語義功能。 3. 2. 2 "給1"句式轉換之探討

如上章所言,句式語法理論認為介詞"給"所組成的句式之整體意義為 "有意的給與性轉移"。此小節將根據上表 2-4 "給"的三種基本句式 S1、 S2 和 S3 來探討"給1"的句法功能和這三種句式間是否能互相轉換。

S1: S(施事者)-給-X(既定目標)-V-O(實體事物)

S2: S(施事者)-V-O(實體事物)-給-X(終點)

S3: S(施事者)-V-給-X(終點)-O(實體事物)

(31a) 我給你買一雙新鞋。

施事 既定目標 具體事物

(31b) 我買一雙新鞋給你。

施事 具體事物 終點

(31c)我買給你一雙新鞋。

施事 終點 具體事物

例句 (31a) "我給你買一雙新鞋"的句式意義是:我施行給予你買一雙 新鞋的動作。由於"給1"的的語義標記為"終點格",因此在例句(31a) 中 的我是"施事",你"既定目標"即是"終點目標",也等於是惠予事物"一 雙新鞋"的接收者。例句(31b)和(31c)的句式意義均表示通過發生"買一 雙新鞋"的這個動作,惠予事物"鞋"在空間上產生位移,"鞋"的擁有權從 "我"轉移到"你",所以例句(31b)和(31c)中的"你"還是事物的接收 者,即是"終點目標",因此例句(31b)和(31c)是合乎語法的句子。

9 M I 61 N I 1 6 6 6 M I 1 7 M 2 I 61 2 I 61 2 I

但這兩個例句(31b)和(31c)的句義是否完全相同?根據上表 2-4 對 S2 和 S3 的區分,兩個句式的差異點在於"惠予事物轉移的發生和完成時間同 步",換言之,例句(31b)"我買一雙新鞋給你"中的"一雙新鞋"和"你" 的中間因為"給"而不緊鄰,所以施事者施行"買"的動作和給予接收者惠予 事物"一雙新鞋"的時間並非同步,"一雙新鞋"的擁有權可能尚未轉移至

30

"你"。相對地,根據上一章沈家煊提出的"相鄰原則"理論,例句(31c) "我買給你一雙新鞋"中的"你"和"一雙新鞋"的位置緊鄰,所以施事者實 行"買"的動作和給予接收者惠予事物"一雙新鞋"所發生的時間為同步, "一雙新鞋"的擁有權很可能已經轉移至"你"。

3.2.3 小結

由上述的討論可得知,介詞"給1" 在句式中的語義為"引介某實體事物 的接受者",其語義標記為"終點格"。而帶有"給1"的三種句式,S1、S2 和 S3 句式彼此間是能夠互相轉換,但這三種句式所表現的句法功能各有不同。

3. 3 "給 2"的語義和語法功能

3.3.1 "給2"的語義特徵

"給 2"主要的的語義為"引介某抽象事物的接收對象",表"向"、 "跟"和"對"之義。筆者從中央平衡語料庫 1200 條"給"字的語料當中,一 共收集到 214 條"給 2"的用法,其中 10 個例句如下¹²:

(32) 設計師給/向大家傳遞了最新的流行訊息。

- (33) 小姐,您要買什麼?我給/向您介紹我們公司的最新產品。
- (34) 一旦開放外資進入,肯定給/對中國地區帶來很大的財富。
- (35) 她舉一些例子來給/向各位說明。
- (36) 藝術家給/向人們展示了美好的生活境界。
- (37) 你一定要參加他的喪禮,給/向社會做個好榜樣。
- (38) 學校給/對學生提供更完善的學習環境。
- (39) 學生們也都成家立業,攜家帶眷給/向老師做壽。

¹² 例句中的"給/"後另一個介詞"向"或"對"並非出現在原本的語料中,為筆者個人所加以標示出 "給"與"向"或"對"同義。

(40) 藉著這個機會,我們也可以給/向大家提供一些意見。

(41) 他今天出色的演出, 給/對觀眾留下了深刻印象。

"給 2"主要的的語義為"引介某抽象事物的接收者",我們觀察上面的十 個例句(32)至(41),發現皆可用"施事者以受物者(介詞賓語)為目標對 象施行某一事件或動作行為"的說法來解釋,筆者認為這裏的"某一事件"不 一定是實際物體,也可以是抽象事物,如施事者施行某一動作行為時所發出的 訊息或產生的影響。若按照我們在上述中對終點格的定義,句子中為"受物 者"(介詞賓語) 即是"施事者發出的動作行為並使某物移位之所既定的 點",筆者由此推論"給 2"的語義標記亦為"終點格"。我們以例句(32) 來說明: "設計師給大家傳遞了最新的流行訊息"中的"大家"是"設計師 (施事者)"施行動作行為"傳遞訊息"的牽涉對象,亦是抽象事物"流行訊 息"的接收者,因此,句子中所引介的介詞賓語為"受物者"而非"受惠 者",因為"設計師"並未代替"大家"做"傳遞訊息"的動作,所以句子中 的"給"為終點格。

3. 3. 2 "給 2" 句式轉換之探討

此小節將根據上表 2-4 "給"的三種句式 S1、S2 和來探討 "給2"的句法 功能和這三種句式間是否能互相轉換。

S1: S(施事者)-給-X(既定目標)-V-O(抽象事物)

S2: S(施事者)-V-O(抽象事物)-給-X(終點)

S3: S(施事者)-V-給-X(終點)-O(抽象事物)

(42a) 她給大家帶來了一個好消息。

施事 既定目標 抽象事物

(42b) 她帶來了一個好消息給大家。

^{施事 抽象事物 終點} (42c)她帶<mark>給</mark>大家一個好消息。

施事 終點 抽象事物

(43a) 我給你講個笑話。

施事 既定目標 抽象事物

(43b)*我 講個笑話 給 你。

施事 抽象事物 終點

(43c)?我 講給 你 一個笑話。

施事 終點 抽象事物

例句(42a)"她給大家帶來了一個好消息"的句式意義是:她向大家施行 帶來好消息的動作行為,由於"給 2"的語義標記為"終點格",因此在例句 (42a)中的"她"是施事,既定目標"大家"即是終點,也等於是抽象事物 "好消息"的接收者。例句(42b)和(42c)的句式意義均表示通過發生"帶 來好消息"的這個行為動作,使"好消息"在空間上產生位移,"好消息"的 擁有權從"她"通過"帶"的動作行為,產生明確的方向性而傳遞到"大 家",所以例句(42b)和(42c)中的"大家"還是是事物的接收者,即是 "終點",因此例句(42b)和(42c)是合乎語法的句子。

但這兩個例句(42b) 和(42c)的句義是否完全相同?根據上表 3-2 (見 21頁) 對 S2 和 S3 的區分,兩個句式的差異點在"惠予事物轉移的發生 和完成時間同步與否"。換言之,根據上一章沈家煊提出的"相鄰原則"理 論,例句(42b)"她帶來了一個好消息給大家"中的"好消息"和"大家"的 中間因為"給"而不緊鄰,所以施事者施行"帶來"的動作行為和接收者接收 "好消息"的時間可能並非同步,此句的句義也可以解釋為儘管"她"已經施 行了"帶來好消息"的動作行為,但是可能位於終點的"大家"沒有出現在動 作施行的現場,也就不會同時接收"好消息","好消息"的擁有權已經轉移 但尚未傳遞到"大家",如以下例句(42d)所示:

(42d)她帶來了一個好消息給大家,可惜十分鐘前大家已經離開,所 以沒有人知道是什麽好消息。 相對地,例句(42c)"她帶給大家一個好消息"中的"大家"和"好消息"的時間為同步,也就是"好消息"的擁有權已經轉移並且在動作施行的現場同時到達了"大家"。另一個證明是,筆者注意到在所有"給"句式 S1 轉換成 S3 後,句中原本存在的"了"被省略,變成如例句"她帶給大家一個好消息",筆者認為這是因為 S3 本身的句式意義為"擁有權已轉移,轉移的發生和完成時間同步"也就表示"已完成"的語義,因此不需要再加上表示已然的標記"了"。

例句 (43a) "我給你講個笑話"的句式意義是:我向你施行講笑話的動 作行為。由於"給 2"的的語義標記為"終點格",因此在例句 (43a)中的 "我"是施事,既定目標"你"即是終點,也等於是抽象事物"笑話"的接收 者。例句 (43b) "*我講個笑話給你"的句式意義表示通過"講"的這個行為 動作,"笑話"在空間上產生位移,但這個由施事者所發出的動作行為並未產 生明確的方向性而位移至所既定的接收點。換言之,無法清楚地交代出實際交 付行為的終點是到達了"你",而非到達其他目標,比如"他"或"她",所 以此例句不合語法。筆者認為此例句不合語法的另一個理由是,在所有的語料 庫中沒有找到 (43b)等同的例子。而例句 (43c)如上表 3-3 所示:"講" 這個動詞屬於"表達類動詞",一般是不能與"給"搭配成"V-給"的用 法,所以當"講給"出現在"S3: S-V-給-X-O"中便成了有爭議的句子。

3.3.3 小結 🦢

由上述的討論可得知,介詞"給 2"在句式中的語義為"引介出動作牽涉 的對象或抽象事物接收者",其語義標記為"終點格"。筆者發現帶有"給 2"的三種句式,S1,S2 和 S3 句式彼此間並非都能互相轉換,只有當"給 2" 能夠明確地表示出動作位移的方向是到達了目標終點,即,到達動作牽涉的對 象或抽象事物接收者時,帶有"給 2"的三種句式才能互相轉換,但這三種句 式的句法功能各有所不同。

同時,筆者注意到例句(43b) "*我講個笑話給你",若在"你"之後加

上動詞"聽",變成"我講個笑話給你聽"便是合乎語法的句子。筆者認為 "講"這個動作行為所產生的結果"笑話",並不是實質上的事物,無法清楚 地表示位移的方向性。所以在"你"之後加上"聽"的動作,便能確定"你" 是"聽"這個動作的既定接收者,也就是明確地表示出"你"是實施者發出動 作行為使"笑話"移位後所到達的終點。

3. 4 "給 3"的語義和語法功能

3. 4. 1 "給3" 的語義特徵

"給 3"主要的語義是引介某獲益行動作或事件的受益對象,相當於 "為"、"替"和"幫"的意思。筆者從中央平衡語料庫 1200 條"给"字的 語料當中,收集到 55 條"給 3"的用法,舉其中 10 個例句如下¹³:

(44) 他想, 鞋都撿了, 好人做到底, 就給/幫她穿上吧。

- (45) 最近她的心臟病又犯了,醫生正在給/替她醫治。
- (46) 我們先送您去飯店休息,已經給/替您訂好了房間。
- (47) 我給/幫你做這個隆鼻手術,一定叫你滿意。
- (48) 現在的電視節目內容參差不齊,父母應該給/替孩子安排適合的電視 節目表。
- (49) 他的父輩本來已經給/替他打下了一個很完整的華夏江山。
- (50) 我得找到這群強盜, 好讓我給/替你媽媽哥哥報仇雪恥。
- (51) 今天是女兒畢業的日子,他特地帶了相機專門給/替女兒拍照。
- (52) 因為她從小就生得美, 父親給/替她取名"如花"。
- (53) 老師建議我給/替孫女報名參加"天才兒童表演比賽"。

¹³ 例句中的"給/"後另一個介詞"幫"或"替"並非出現在原本的語料中,為筆者個人所加以標示出 "給"與"幫"或"替"同義。

"給 3"的語義為"引介某獲益行為動作或事件的受益對象",筆者觀察上 述的 10 個例句(44)至(53),發現例句中的"给"皆可用具有施惠語義的 "為"、"替"和"幫"等詞來取代。按照上文中鄧守信所指出受惠格的語義 特徵有三項:即,具有"為了.....的利益"的語義,"代替"(甲代替乙做了 原本乙該做的事)的語義和"從句子中主語所實施的動作過程中得到利益"的 語義。句子中的"受惠者"(介詞賓語)是施事者"提供某種服務或恩惠"的 受益對象,所"給 3"所引介的間接賓語之語義角色(thematic roles)是受惠格 (benefactive)。我們以例句(44)說明:"他想,鞋都撿了,好人做到底,就 給她穿上吧"中的主語"他"是提供"穿鞋"這項服務的人,代替"她"做了 原本她該做的事"穿鞋","她"同時也從主語所實施的動作行為過程中得到 利益而成為"受惠者"。

3. 4. 2 "給 3" 句式轉換之探討

此小節將根據上表 2-4 "給"的三種句式 S1, S2 和 S3 來探討 "給 3"的 句法功能和這三種句式間是否能互相轉換。

S1: S(施事者)-給-X(受惠者)-V-O(服務行為/受益事件)
S2: S(施事者)-V-O(服務行為/受益事件)-給-X(受惠者)
S3: S(施事者)-V-給-X(受惠者)-O(服務行為/受益事件)

(54a) 我給你打聽打聽這件事。

施事 受惠者 服務行為

(54b)*我打聽打聽這件事給你。

施事 服務行為 終點

(54c)*我打聽打聽給你這件事。

施事 服務行為 終點

例句 (54a) "我給你打聽打聽這件事"的句式意義是:我代替你做打聽 這件事的動作。由於"給3"的的語義標記為"受惠格",因此在例句 (54a) 中的"我"是施事,"你"是受惠者,也等於是施事提供"打聽"服務行為的 受益對象。但例句 (54b) "*我打聽打聽這件事給你"中由"給 3" 所引介出 的受惠格"你"在此例句中卻成了接收"這件事"的終點,所以是不合語法的 句子。筆者亦將以 S3 的句式意義"擁有權已轉移,轉移的發生和完成時間同 步"的觀點來說明例句 (54c)之所以被視為病句的原因。例句 (54c)中的由 施事者"我"對"你"所提供的是"這件事"的給予,表示"這件事"的擁有 權已轉移至"你",轉移的發生和完成時間同步。但是施事者實際上所提供的 是"打聽這件事"的服務行為和事件而不是"這件事"的事物給予,因此"打 聽這件事"的擁有權應該為施事"我"所有,並未轉移至"你"。

3. 4. 3 小結

由上述的討論可得知,介詞"給 3" 在句式中的語義為"引介某獲益行動 作或事件的受益對象",其語義標記為"受惠格"。我們發現帶有"給 3"的 S1句式並不能轉換成 S2 和 S3 句式。

3. 5 "給 4"的語義和語法功能

3. 5. 1 "給 4"的語義特徵

"給 4"主要的語義是"引介某虧損行為動作或事件的受害對象", 筆者 認為可以表"害"之義。筆者從中央平衡語料庫 1200 條"給"字的語料當中, 發現帶有"給 4"的例句為數甚少只有 5 條,例句如下¹⁴:

(55) 真糟糕, 電影票我給/害你弄丟了。

(56)全怪我不爭氣,給/害您丟臉了。

(57)是我不小心,給/害你弄丟了機票。

(58) 這次的錯誤投資,給/書你賠了不少錢。

(59)是我的疏忽大意,給/害你損失了十萬美金。

¹⁴ 例句中的"給/"後另一個介詞"害"並非出現在原本的語料中,為筆者個人所加以標示出"給"與 "害"同義。

筆者觀察上述的五個例句(55)至(59),發現例句中的"給"皆可用具 有受損語義的"害"字來取代。如例句(55)的句式意義是,"我"弄丟了電 影票,而票是"你"的,即,由於"我"的原因使你受到損失。"給"的作用 是引介出受害對象"你"。對於在語料"給 4"甚少出現的現象,筆者認為有 可能因為在一般實際的生活用語中,大部分的華語母語者習慣用"把"字句或 "讓"等詞來表示受害或受損的事件,如:"這個壞消息把她嚇暈了"、"一 輛大卡車轟隆隆的擦身而過,幾乎把我給撞倒"、"千萬不能見錢貪心,把自 己名譽拖垮"和"我讓您丟臉了"等。因此,帶有"給 4"相關例句的用法, 相對地也就不普遍。

3. 5. 2 "給 4" 句式轉換之探討

此小節將根據上表 2-4 "給"的三種句式 S1、S2 和 S3 來探討 "給 4"的 句法功能和這三種句式間是否能互相轉換。

S1: S(施事者)-給-X(受損者)-V-O(虧損動作或事件)
S2: S(施事者)-V-O(虧損動作或事件)-給-X(受損者)
S3: S(施事者)-V-給-X(受損者)-O(虧損動作或事件)

(60a)對不起,我給您砸了信譽。
施事 受損者 虧損事件
(60b)*對不起,我砸了信譽給您。
施事 虧損事件 終點
(60c)*對不起,我砸給您信譽。
施事 終點虧損事件

例句(60a)"我給您砸了信譽"的句式意義是:我損害了你的信譽,使你 受到了損害。由於"給 4"的語義標記為"引介受到不利影響的受害對象", 因此在例句 (60a)中的"我"是施事,"您"是受損者,也等於是施事造成 的"砸了信譽" 虧損行為的受害對象。 但例句 (60b)"*我砸了信譽給您" 中"砸了信譽"是損失的行為,也就沒有事物可讓"你"接受,但"給 4"所 引介出的受損者"你",在此例句中卻成了接收"信譽"的終點,所以此句是 不合語法的句子。

同樣地,除了以格語法的角度"給 4"所引介出的語義格來解釋例句 (60c)"*我砸給您信譽"是不合語法的句子外,我們還能以 S3 的句式意義 "擁有權已轉移,轉移的發生和完成時間同步"的觀點來說明例句(60c)之所 以被視為病句的原因。例句(60c)中的由施事者"我"對"你"做了"砸了信 譽"的事件,表示這件事的擁有權已轉移已經從"我"到"你",轉移的發生 和完成時間同步。但是"砸了信譽"是虧損事件,沒有了信譽,擁有權即不存 在,便無法從"我"轉移到"你"。

3. 5. 3 小結

由上述的討論可得知,介詞"給 4"在句式中的語義為"引介某虧損行為動作或事件的受害對象",其語義標記為"引介受損者"。我們發現帶有"給 4"的 S1 句式並不能轉換成 S2 和 S3 句式。

3. 6 "給1"至"給4"的句式轉換現象分析

綜合上述各小節中的討論結果, "給 1"、"給 2"、"給 3"和"給 4" 的語義特徵各有所異, 而這四種"給"在三種句式 S1、S2 和 S3 中的轉換現象 亦有所不同。筆者將其中相同和差異之處整理成表 3-4, 如下所示:

句法	S1 句式	S2.句式	S3 句式
語義	S-給-X-V-O	S - V- O - 給-X	S - V - 給- X - O
給1(終點格)	~	. 🗸	~
引介實體事物	我給你買一雙新	我買一雙新鞋給你。	我買給你一雙新
的受物者	鞋。		鞋。
給2(終點格)	1	1	~
引介抽象事物	她給大家帶來了一	她帶來了一個好消	她帶給大家一個好
或行為動作牽	個好消息。	息給大家。	消息。
涉的接收者		×	×
	我給你講個笑話。	*我講個笑話給你。	?我講給你個笑 話。
What we want the state of the s			
約3(文愚俗)	升 从 / 水 打 防 注 / 比		
引介某種獲益	我給你打聽這件	*找打鳃這件爭給	* 找打 鳃紿你适仵
行為動作或事	爭。	你。	事。
件的受惠者	and the second second		
給4	1	×	×
引介某種虧損	我給您砸了信譽。	*我砸了信譽給您。	*我砸給您信譽。
動作行為或事			
件的受損者	14	2	

表 3-4: "給 1"至 "給 4"的語義特徵和 "S1、S2 和 S3"句式轉換一覽表 ("✓"標記表示:句子合語法, "★"標記表示:句子不合語法)

從上表中顯示, "給1"、"給2"、"給3"和"給4"皆可以進入S1句 式而成為合語法的句子, 但是只有"給1"的S1能夠轉換成S2和S3的句式; 然而"給2"的S1出現有些例句可以轉換成S2和S3的句式, 有些卻不可以 轉換成S2和S3句式; 而"給3"和"給4"的S1都不能轉換成S2和S3的句 式。本文在3.1.2節中曾指出"給"在S3句式中會受限於所搭配動詞(動詞 組)本身所具有的語義特徵, 換言之,S1和S2是否能轉換成S3句式,決定 於S3句式中"給"所搭配的動詞(動詞組)的語義特徵。因此,下一小節將主 要探討"給"的S1和S2兩種句式轉換之所以受限的原因。 3.6.1 "給"的句式轉換受限之原因

從上章節"給1"、"給2"、"給3"和"給4"在三種句式S1、S2和 S3 轉換現象的結果,筆者注意到,句式中的轉移物(介詞賓語)似乎對句式是 否能夠轉換具有某種影響。因此,在本章節中,筆者將分別就"轉移物為實體 或抽象"和"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步"這兩個因素做進一步的 討論,以瞭解造成介詞"給"的S1和S2句式轉換之所以受限的主要原因。

3. 6. 2 轉移物為實體或抽象

首先,我們來看轉移物為實體或抽象的問題。朱德熙(1983)指出"唱(歌)"、"講(笑話)"、"變(把戲)"和"做(鬼臉)"等動詞以及屬於"製作"類的動詞,如"炒(菜)"、"彻(茶)"、"打(毛衣)"和 "畫(畫)"等,都是所謂的使成動詞(existential causative),帶的都是結 果賓語(object of result),這種賓語所指的事物在動作發生以前不存在,只是 隨著動作的完成才出現。此兩類動詞的區別在於前一類的動詞的賓語所指的事 物不是實體,是不能給予的。如果賓語不是實體而出現這類句式"S-V-O-給-X"(同本文的 S2 句式)中,便成為不合語法的句子,如下的例句(61a)、 (62a)、(63a)和(64a)所示:

(61a) *唱個歌給我。

(61b) 唱個歌給我聽。

(62a)*講個笑話給我。

(62b) 講個笑話給我聽。

(63a)*變個把戲給我。

(63b) 變個把戲給我看。

(64a)*做個鬼臉給我。

(64b) 做個鬼臉給我看。

朱德熙認為此一類動詞"唱"、"講"、"變"和"做"只能在介詞實語 後加"聽"、"看"、"聞"和"欣賞"等少數動詞才能出現"S2:S-V-O-給-X"的句式,如例句(61b)、(62b)、(63b)和(64b)所示。但他並沒 有進一步說明為何在介詞賓語後加上述的動詞,這些例句就是合語法的句子。 同時,筆者存疑是否所有的抽象轉移物都不能出現在 S2 句式中,這項疑點值得 再做進一步的釐清。

3. 6. 3 轉移物為實體或抽象之批判

從上述 3-4 "給"句式轉換一覽表中,筆者發現同樣是由引介抽象事物或 行為動作牽涉的接收者的 "給 2"的 S1 所進入的 S2 句式中,結果顯示:並非 所有的例句在轉換成 S2 和 S3 句式後,便成為不合語法的句子。除此以外,筆 者從 "給 2"的語料中找到為數不少的句子,從 S1 轉換成 S2 和 S3 句式後,還 是合乎語法的句子。筆者從中舉出其中的 10 個例子,如例句(65)至(74)所 示。而此結果,與朱德熙先前所提出 "如果賓語不是實體而出現這類句式 S- V-O- 給-X(同本文的 S2 句式)中,便成為不合語法的句子"的說法並不一致。

- (65) S1: 老王給我使了個眼色,我趕緊閉上了嘴。
 - S2: 老王使了個眼色給我,我趕緊閉上了嘴。
 - S3: 老王使給我一個眼色,我趕緊閉上了嘴。
- (66) S1: 她已經夠忙了, 可別再給她添麻煩。
 - S2: 她已經夠忙了,可別再添麻煩給她。 S3: 她已經夠忙了,可別再添給她麻煩。
- (67) S1: 上帝給他賞賜智慧和勇氣。
 - S2: 上帝賞賜智慧和勇氣給他。
 - S3: 上帝賞賜給他智慧和勇氣。

- (68) S1: 主持人給台下的觀眾帶來更多的歡笑。
 - S2: 主持人帶來更多的歡笑給台下的觀眾。
 - S3: 主持人帶給台下的觀眾更多的歡笑。
- (69) S1: 我們要給下一代保留這份美感。
 - S2: 我們要保留這份美感給下一代。
 - S3: 我們要保留給下一代這份美感。
- (70) S1: 一個人殘疾,不只是社會失去人才也給家庭帶來莫大的負擔。S2: 一個人殘疾,不只是社會失去人才也帶來莫大的負擔給家庭。
 - S3: 一個人殘疾, 不只是社會失去人才, 也帶給家庭莫大的負擔。
- (71) S1: 我給你找個理由, 好讓你不需要去開會。
 - S2: 我找個理由給你, 好讓你不需要去開會。
 - S3: 我找給你一個理由, 好讓你不需要去開會。
- (72) S1: 千萬別給我冠這個罪名,我只不過是拿錢辦事。
 - S2: 千萬別冠這個罪名給我,我只不過是拿錢辦事。
 - S3: 千萬別冠給我這個罪名, 我只不過是拿錢辦事。
- (73) S1: 據說她的面相克夫,而且會給家人帶來厄運。S2: 據說她的面相克夫,而且會帶來厄運給家人。
 - S3: 據說她的面相克夫, 而且會帶來給家人厄運。

(74) S1: 我可是給你留面子,你卻是一點也不領情。

S2: 我可是留面子給你,你卻是一點也不領情。

S3: 我可是留給你面子,你卻是一點也不領情。

對於朱德熙以"轉移物不是實體,是不能給予的"給"的理由,提出帶有 "給 2"的 S1 和 S2 句式間是不能轉換的說法,筆者認為有待商榷。因為除了 上述例句的驗證之外,筆者從中央平衡語料庫 1200 條字的語料當中,所收集到 214 條"給 2"的例句中發現,依當地人講國語的習慣,大多數的句子是可轉換 成 S2 和 S3 句式,只有 21 條是無法轉換成 S2 句式,如下面例句(75)至 (95) 所示:

- (75) S1: 小時候常和她一同去牧羊, 她給我唱了很多歌。
 - S2: *小時候常和她一同去牧羊,她唱了很多歌給我。
- (76) S1: 我忍不住給她們三個唱這首歌。
 - S2: *我忍不住唱這首歌給她們三個。
- (77) S1: 他拿了臺北報紙給他念標題。
 - S2: *他拿了臺北報紙念標題給他。
- (78) S1: 父親先給我解釋歌詞大意。
 - S2: *父親先解釋歌詞大意給我。
- (79) S1: 他到底是怎麼死的? 青青當然無法給他解釋。 S2: *他到底是怎麼死的? 青青當然無法解釋給他。
- (80) S1: 看我如何給其他人"說書"。
 - S2: *看我如何"說書"給其他人。

(81) S1: 我舉一些例子來給各位說明。

S2: *我舉一些例子來說明給各位。

- (82) S1:他一來便儘量給她說好話,要她當小警員維持全班的秩序。S2:*他一來便儘量說好話給她,要她當小警員維持全班的秩序。
- (83) S1: 是有一次考試給盲生念考題。

S2: *是有一次考試念考題給盲生。

- (84) S1: 好好好, 讓我慢慢的給你說吧。
 - S2: *好好好, 讓我慢慢的說給你吧。
- (85) S1: 她很喜歡再和蘇普在一起玩, 給他說故事。
 - S2: *她很喜歡再和蘇普在一起玩, 說故事給他。
- (86) S1: 我說: 我們同病相憐, 我給你們講故事。
 - S2: *我說: 我們同病相憐, 我講故事給你們。
- (87) S1: 他給母語非英語的人教授英文。
 - S2: *他教授英文給母語非英語的人。
- (88) S1: 艾氏也給後現代主義開了個玩笑。
 - S2: *艾氏也開了個玩笑給後現代主義。
- (89) S1: 學生們也都成家立業, 攜家帶眷給老師作壽。
 - S2:*學生們也都成家立業,攜家帶眷作壽給老師。
- (90) S1: 竟然不在家, 據家人稱, 林是到廟裏給民眾拜年了。 S2: *竟然不在家, 據家人稱, 林是到廟裏拜年給民眾了。

(91) S1: 她抱著小兒子到銀安殿上去給太后請安。

S2: *她抱著小兒子到銀安殿上去請安給太后。

(92) S1: 校友一定要來參加他的喪禮, 給社會做個榜樣。

S2: *校友一定要來參加他的喪禮,做個榜樣給社會。

(93) S1: 等一下,我們打算給學生放佛典故事的錄影帶。

S2: *等一下,我們打算放佛典故事的錄影帶給學生。

(94) S1: 就此機會也給我們所有的同仁上了一課。

S2: *就此機會也上了一課給我們所有的同仁。

(95) S1: 威廉斯給柯爾曼上了寶貴的一課。

S2: *威廉斯上了寶貴的一課給柯爾曼。

由上文所舉的例句(65)至(74)的句式轉換可說明,帶有終點格語義標誌的"給1"和"給2"的S1句式,當轉移物為實體事物時,是可以轉換成S2和S3句式;相對地,當轉移物為抽象事物時,也並非一概不能轉換成S2和S3的句式。所以,本文由此澄清"轉移物為實體或抽象"並不是"給"句式轉換受限的主要因素,筆者將在下文就此說法作詳細說明。

3. 6. 4 轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步

在上一小節中,本文已經厘清"轉移物為實體或抽象"並非是"給"句式 轉換受限的主要因素。接下來,此小節將繼續探討當"轉移物為抽象"的情況 下,"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步"是否才是造成"給"的 S1 和 S2 句式轉換受限的關鍵所在。 首先,來看上面所舉的 21 個 S1 句式無法轉換成 S2 句式的例句,不難發現 這些例句中施事者所給予的抽象事物或所施行的行為動作,大多與"話語"和 "視覺"方面的動作行為有關。如例句(75)和(76)的"唱歌"、例句 (77)的"念標題"、例句(78)"解釋大意"、例句(79)的"解釋原 因"、例句(80)的"說書"、例句(81)的"說明例子"、例句(82)的 "說好話"、例句(83)的"念考題"、例句(84)的"慢慢說"、例句 (85)和(86)的"說故事"、例句(87)的"教授英文"以及例句(88)的 "開玩笑"等是偏向於話語方面的動作行為;而例句例句(89)的"做壽"、 例句(90)的"拜年"、例句(91)的"請安"、例句(92)的"做榜樣"、 例句(93)的"放錄影帶"以及例句(94)和(95)的"上課"等則是屬於視 覺方面的動作行為。

根據筆者的觀察,上述這兩類的動作行為皆包含了一個共同現象,即,施 事者為了某個既定的接收對象而有目的性地施行給予某種抽象事物的動作行 為。像施行"上課"和"教授英文"動作行為的目的是為了傳授知識,而施行 "請安"、"拜年"、和"做壽"動作行為的目的是為了表達人際互動。換句 話說,施事者和接收者雙方需要同時存在才能發生上述話語和視覺等目的性的 動作行為,當雙方中的任何一方不在現場時,此類的行為動作也就無從發生。 就語法的角度來看,這種介詞賓語所引介的抽象事物在施事者的動作發生以前 是不存在的,只能隨著施事者動作的完成才出現,比如 "唱歌"的"歌",在 "唱"以前, "歌"並不存在,而是隨著"唱"的動作才出現,同時預定的接 收對象必然也"聽到了歌"。

基於上述已說明此類"話語"和"視覺"等動作行為所表現出的兩項特點: "動作的發生需要施事者和接收者雙方同時存在"以及"轉移物並非原先早已存在,而是經由施事者施行動作的當時所衍生"。筆者推論出"轉移物轉移的發生和完成時間為同步"是上述兩類動作行為發生的基本條件。在前文中曾指出 S2 句式意義的基本概念為"擁有權已轉移,轉移的發生和完成時間非同步",由此原則並根據沈家煊提出的"相鄰原則"理論,來看例句(75)

46

"*她唱了很多歌給我",句中的"歌"和"我"中間被"給"所區隔,表示 "歌"出現和"我"接收的時間並不同步。但是真實的情況如上述所言:她唱 的當時,歌也同時讓我聽到了,轉移物轉移和達到過程應該要同步。所以,例 句(75) "*她唱了很多歌給我"不合語法。

通過以上的分析和討論, 筆者認為 "轉移物轉移的發生和完成時間為同步 或非同步" 是影響 S1 句式能否轉換成 S2 句式的主要原因。對於上面所列舉的 其他(75)至(95)的 21 個例句,因為這些句式中的轉移物並非原先早已存 在,而是經由施事者施行動作後所衍生, 筆者發現亦可應用受限於 "轉移物轉 移和達到過程為非同步"的相同理由來解釋這些句式不能轉換成 S2 的原因。接 下來,筆者將從反面的角度來驗證是否帶 "給 2"句式中的的轉移物是原先早 已存在的,也就是轉移物轉移和到達過程為非同步時, S1 和 S2 句式間的轉換 是否就不受限制?

藉由上兩小節中 10 個 S1 可以轉換成 S2 句式的例句(65) 至(74),來 觀察其句式中的轉移物是否早已存在。這些在句中施事者所給予的抽象事物或 所施行的動作行為,依次如下:"使眼色"、"賞賜智慧和勇氣"、"帶來歡 笑"、"保留美感"、"帶來負擔"、"找理由"、"冠罪名"、"帶來歡 笑"、"留面子"和"添麻煩"。筆者發現上述所給予的抽象事物或行為,基 本上都不是在施事者施行動作的當時所衍生,而是在施事者施行動作以前便已 存在。由此可見,上述的動作行為中的施事者所給予的抽象事物是原先早已存 在的,也就是和 S2 句式中"轉移物轉移和達到過程為非同步"的觀點一致。因 此,上述的例(65) 至(74)的 S1 句式皆可轉換為 S2 句式。

筆者根據上述的探討結果,分別將"轉移物為實體或抽象"、"轉移物在 動作行為發生前是否早已存在"、"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步" 和"動詞類別"等四項變數,對介詞"給"相關的三種句式 S1、S2 和 S3 三者 間轉換現象之受限因素做一比較。如下表 3-5 所示:

47

	P100 P1 7 2 - 1			FOR HIM DO DONN B
	"給"相關句式	S1 句式	S2.句式	S3句式
受限因素		S-給-X-V-O	S-V-O-給-X	S-V-給-X-O
	具體		_	
轉移物	抽象	—	+/	+/-
	先前已存在	_		_
	先前不存在		+/	+/
轉移過程	同步		+	+
	非同步		I	-
	向内動詞			+
	向外動詞			
動詞類別	雙向動詞		-	—
	表達類動詞	Canal .	+	+

表 3-5: 句式 S1、S2 和 S3 轉換受限原因之比較表 ("-"標記表示完全不受影響: "+"表示受影響: "+/-"表示部分受影響)

3.6.5 小結

綜觀上述的說明和討論結果,筆者發現"轉移物為實體或抽象"並非是 "給"的 S1 和 S2 句式轉換受限的關鍵因素所在。如下頁圖 3-1 所示:當句中 的轉移物為抽象時,"給"句式轉換之所以受限制是受到"轉移物在動作行為 發生前是否早已存在"和"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步"兩個因素 的影響。

จุฬาลงกรณ่มหาวิทยาลัย

S1句式: S-給-X(轉移物)-V-O S2句式: S-V-O-給-X(轉移物)



圖 3-1: S1 和 S2 句式轉換受限之分析圖

筆者整理本章節中上述相關的討論和分析,並且結合上表 3-5 和上圖 3-1 的結果,對帶有介詞 "給"的三種句式受限之現象概括為三項:

- 第一、"S1: S 給-X V-O"的句式,在此三句式中受限程度最小。因為所有的"給"("給 1"至"給 4")皆能夠進入 S1 句式而成為合語法的句子,如例句(96)、(97)、(98)和(99)。
 - (96) 老闆給每位員工發薪資。(給1)
 - (97)他給我念今天報紙的新聞標題。(給2)
 - (98) 我馬上給你開門。(給3)
 - (99) 對不起,是我給您弄丟了錢包。(給4)

- 第二、"S2:S-V-O-給-X"的句式,在此三句式中受限程度居中。因為所有的"給 1",如例句(100)和某部分的"給 2",如例句(101a)能進入 S2 句式;但是"給 3"和"給 4"均不能進入 S2 句式,如句(102)和(103)所示。而造成某些"給 2"不能進入 S2 句式的因素是"轉移物在動作行為發生前不存在,並且轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步",如例句(101b)。此外,"給 2"亦會受到"表達類動詞"語義特徵的限制而不能進入 S2 句式¹⁵,如例句(101c)。因此,S2 句式受限於"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步"以及介詞"給"所搭配動詞的語義特徵。
 - (100) 老闆發薪資給每位員工。(給1)
 - (101a)她得先留個後路給自己。(給2,能進入S2句式)
 - (101b)*他念今天報紙的新聞標題給我。(給2,不能進入S2句式)
 - (101c)*我告訴一件事情給他。(給2,不能進入S2句式)
 - (102)*我馬上開門給你。(給3)
 - (103)*對不起,是我弄丟了錢包給您。(給4)
- 第三、"S3:S-V-給-O-X"的句式,在三種句式中受限程度最高。
 因為只有部分"給1"和"給2"能進入S3句式,如例句(104a)和(105a)。"給3"和"給4"皆不能進入S3句式,如例句(106)和(107)。而造成某些"給2"不能進入S3句式的因素是"移物在動作行為發生前不存在,並且轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步移物轉移和到達過程為同步"和"表達類動詞"語義特徵的限制,如例句(105b)。此外,某些"給1"還會因為"向內動詞"的動詞組語義特徵的限制而不能進入S3句式,如例句(104b)所示。因此,S3句式的受限因素,除了"轉移物轉移和到達過程為同步或非同步"以外,還包括了"V-給"受其動詞搭配所限制的因素。

¹⁵ 張伯江(1999)指出這類動詞就是把物質空間的給予過程投射到話語空間的現象。由於給予物不是具 體的物質,所以人們一般不用 "AVP 給 R",如: *我告訴一件事情給他。

- (104a)老闆發給每位員工薪資。(給1,能進入S3句式)
- (104b)*我赢給你十塊錢。(給1,不能進入S3句式)
- (105a)我們應該留給下一代一個無污染的生活環境。(給 2,能進入 S3 句式)
- (105b)*他念給我今天報紙的新聞標題。(給2,不能進入S3式)
- (106)*我馬上開給你門。(給3)
- (107)*對不起,是我弄丟給您錢包。(給4)



ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

第四章

介詞"給"的習得調查及教學應用研究

筆者以上文對介詞"給1"至"給4"的語義功能之分類和"給"的語法結 構之分析結果為基礎,分別針對介詞"給"的語義層面和語法層面設計兩份問 卷,測試在泰國華語學習者對介詞"給"其不同語義和句法的實際使用情形, 藉由問卷測試結果探討學習者在句法和語義上的學習難處。本章將對調查結果 的相關情況進行整理說明,並結合介詞"給"的語義複雜度和"給"的語法難 度提出合適的教學排序。

4.1 華語學習者學習介詞"給"的調查研究

4.1.1 調查目的

本調查的主要目的是瞭解泰國大學生對介詞"給"的不同語義特徵和句法 功能之實際掌握情形,分析華語學習者在這些方面的學習難點。

4.1.2 調査對象

本測試以三所泰國大學(朱拉隆功大學、易三倉大學和皇太后大學)的中 文系本科生為主要調查對象,調查對象不限定其性別和年齡,依其學習漢語的 時間分為A(初級)和B(中級)兩組:A組其學習漢語時間平均尚未超480 小時;B組其學習漢語平均介於480到960小時之間。本調查以上述的學習時 間總數做區別,是為了比較華語學習者在習得之前和習得之後,在介詞"給" 的語義功能和語法結構方面的掌握之差異,此調查一共收回有效問卷120份。

A 組: 50 位泰國中文系大學生, 已學習480 小時左右的漢語。

B 組: 70 位泰國中文系大學生, 已學習 480 至 960 小時左右的漢語。

4. 1. 3 調查方法

本調查採用問卷填寫的方式,問卷分為兩個部分:第一部測試泰國中文系 大學生對介詞"給"語義判斷的情況,共有15道單選題;第二部分則測試泰國 中文系學生對介詞"給"的語法判斷的情況,共有15道是非題。(問卷見附) 4.1.4 調查結果

在下文中將調查結果,按照介詞"給"的各個語義功能和語法結構分述說 明。

4. 1. 4. 1 介詞 "給"的語義功能

1)介詞"給1",引介某實體事物的接收對象,表"給予"之義。帶"給 1"語義的句式,除了大陸地區習慣使用的S1:S-給-X-V-O句式,如例句 (1)、(4)和(5)外;還有臺灣地區一般常用的S2:S-V-O-給-X句 式,如例句(2)、(3)和(6),筆者注意到"給1"的S2句式在臺灣平衡 語料庫中出現的頻率相當高,因此在設計問卷時,同時將"給1"的S1和S2 兩種句式列為調查的題項,以便比較學習者對"給1"的S1和S2兩種句式的 使用情形。

測試題:

- (1)你的生日快到了,我給你買一隻新手機。
- (2) 你的生日快到了,我買一隻新手機給你。
- (3) 昨晚我寄了一封信給媽媽,告訴她我一切都好。
- (4) 天氣變冷了, 我給爸爸打一條圍巾。
- (5) 昨晚我給媽媽寄了一封信,告訴她我一切都好。
- (6) 天氣變冷了, 我打一條圍巾給爸爸。

調査、	例句(1) 例句		J (2) 例句		(3) 例句(4)		例句(5)		例句 (6)			
結衆 調査 對象	偏誤數	百 分 比 %	偏誤數	百 分 比 %	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百 分 比 %	偏誤數	百 分 比 %	偏課数	百分比 %
A組 (50人)	21	42	7	14	37	74	32	64	44	88	10	20
B組 (70人)	29	41.4	0	0	39	55.7	38	54.2	55	78.5	9	12.8
合計 (120人)	50	41.6	7	5.8	76	63.3	70	58.3	99	82.5	19	15.8

表 4-1: "給 1" 之語義偏誤情況

從表 4-1 所顯示的介詞 "給1" 之語義偏誤情況,可以看出上述的六個例句:

- (1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(5)"昨晚我給媽媽 寄了一封信,告訴她我一切都好",兩組平均為 82.5%,使用錯 誤的比例相當高。而例句(5)亦是兩組受訪者在"給"語義判斷 15 道題中,偏誤率最高的例題,大多數的受訪者回答此例句中 "給"的語義為"向"。
- (2) 偏誤率最低的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(2)"你的生日快到 了,我買一隻新手機給你",兩組平均為 5.8%,兩組使用錯誤的 比例均偏低,特別是 B 組的偏誤率是零。而例句(2)亦是兩組 受訪者在"給"語義判斷 15 道題中,偏誤率最低的例題。
- (3) 不論 A 或 B 組, 在帶"給1"的 S2 句式的例句(2)、(3)和
 (6)中的偏誤率都低於帶"給1"的 S2 句式的例句(1)、(4)和(5),由此可見,兩組受訪者對 S2 句式的掌握好於 S1 句式。
- (4) B 組,即學習時間長的一組,在每個例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組,即學習時間少的一組。基本上,A、B兩組在各個例句偏誤 率的差距並不大,約為10%。

2)介詞"給 2",引介出動作牽涉的對象或抽象事物接收對象,表"向"、"對"和"跟"之義。

測試題:

- (1) 她給大家帶了一個好消息,她下個月要結婚。
- (2) 新年好!我們給您老拜年來了。
- (3) 你心情不好,我給你講個笑話。

例句(3) 例句(1) 例句(2) 調查結果 偏誤數 百分比% 調查對象 偏誤數 |百分比% | 偏誤數 |百分比% 24 48 A 組(50人) 16 27 54 8 28.5 32.8 20 9 23 B 絽 (70人) 12.8 44 36.6 50 41.6 17 14.1 合計(120人)

表 4-2: "給 2" 之語義偏誤情況

從表 4-2 所顯示的介詞 "給 2"之語義偏誤情況,可以看出上述的三個 例句:

- (1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(2)"新年好!我們
 <u>給</u>您老拜年來了",平均為 41.6 %。
- (2) 偏誤率最低的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(1)"她給大家帶了 一個好消息,她下個月要結婚",兩組平均為 14.1 %
- (3) B 組在每個例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組,其中 A 、 B 兩組在
 - (1)的偏誤率差距皆很小,只有 4.7 %;但兩組在例句(2)和
 - (3) 偏誤率的差距都較大,大約為20%。

3)介詞"給 3",引介某獲益行為動作或事件的受益對象,表"為"、"替"和"幫"之義。

測試題:

- (1) 王醫生正在給病人看病。
- (2) 沒問題, 我給你打聽打聽這件事。
- (3) 工人給我們修好了電視,現在可以看了。

調查結果	例句	(1)	例句	(2)	例句(3)		
調査對象	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	
A組(50人)	24	48	14	28	10	20	
B組(70人)	21	30	4	5.7	2	2.8	
合計(120人)	45	37.5	18	15	12	10	

表 4-3: "給 3" 之語義偏誤情況

從表 4-3 所顯示的介詞 "給 3"之語義偏誤情況,可以看出上述的三個 例句:

- (1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(1)"王醫生正在給病人看病",平均為 37.5%。
- (2) 偏誤率最低的,不論 A 或 B 組都是例句(3) "工人給我們修好 了電視,現在可以看了",平均為 10 %,兩組使用錯誤的比例均 偏低,特別是 B 組的偏誤率只有 2.8 %。

(3) B 組在每個例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組,基本上, A、 B 兩組 在各個例句偏誤率的差距約為 20%。

4)介詞"給 4",引介某虧損行為動作或事件的受害對象,相當於"害"
 之義。

測試題:

- (1) 是我不小心, 給你弄丟了機票。
- (2) 這個錯誤的投資,給你賠了不少錢。
- (3) 對不起! 我給你丟臉了。

表 4-4: "給 4" 之語義偏誤情況

調査結果	例句	例句 (1) 例句 (2) 例句 (3)									
調査對象	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%					
A組(50人)	9	18	14	28	6	12					
B組(70人)	4	5.7	4	5.7	3	4.3					
合計(120人)	13	10.8	18	15	9	7.5					

從表 4-4 所顯示的介詞 "給 4"之語義偏誤情況,可以看出上述的三個例 句:

- (1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組都是例句(2) "這個錯誤的投資, 給你賠了不少錢",平均達 15 %,即使此資料是在 "給 4"
 之語義偏誤率算是最高的,但兩組使用錯誤的比例並不高,沒有超過 20%。
- (2) 偏誤率最低的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(3) "對不起! 我給 你丟臉了",兩組平均達 7.5%。
- (3) B 組在每個例句中的偏誤率都是低於 A 組,基本上, A、 B 兩組 在各個例句的偏誤率,其差距約為 15 %。

小結一

筆者將上面所分析介詞"給 1"至"給 4"語義功能的分項偏誤率,加以匯 整如下表 4-5 所示:

"給"之		總數 1800 題 (A組750題 + B 組1050題)												
前 我分項	暗義分頃 給1(×3题) S1句式		綸1(S24	×3题) 订式	給2(S1	×3題) 句式	給3(S1	×3 題) 句式	給4(×3題) S1句式					
	·A組:	A組:150題		150.题	A組 :	150題	A組:150題							
	B組:210题				B組: 210题		B組:210题		B組:210題					
	偏誤數	百分比	偏誤數	百分比	偏誤數	百分比	偏誤數	百分比	偏誤數	百分比				
偏誤率		70		70		70		70		70				
A組:50人	97	64.6	54	36	59	39.3	48	32	29	19.3				
B組:70人	122	58	48	22.8	52	24.7	27	12.8	11	4.7				
合計 120人	219	60.8	102	28 <mark>.3</mark>	111	30.8	75	20.8	40	11.1				
總偏誤數		547												
總偏誤率					30.3%									

表 4-5: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 的語義功能偏誤情況之比較

由表 4-5 可顯示介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之語義的分項偏誤情況:

(1) A、B兩組在"給1"至"給2"之語義所呈現的偏誤情況,相當 一致,即,不論是A或B組在"給1"至"給4"各個分項的偏誤 率的排序是相同的。其偏誤率由低至高的排序如下圖4-1所示:

圖 4-1: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 的語義功能偏誤之排序

- (2) 偏誤率最高的,是帶"給1"的S1句式,兩組平均為60.8%,表 示受訪者使用錯誤的比例高於50%,如例句"昨晚我給媽媽寄了 一封信,告訴她我一切都好";偏誤率最低的,是"給4",兩組 平均為11.1%,如例句"真糟糕,他弄丟了電影票給你"。
- (3) B 組,即學習時間長的一組在每個例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組, 即學習時間少的一組。基本上, A、 B 兩組在各個例句偏誤率的 差距約為 15% 左右。表示學習者在習得之前和習得之後,在介詞 "給"的語義功能方面的掌握有所差異。

- (4) A、B兩組在帶有相同語義"給1"但不同句式S1和S2的平均偏 誤率分別為60.8%和28.3%,兩者間的差距頗大。可見,兩組受 訪者對S2句式的正確使用率高過S1許多。漢語的介詞片語一般是 位於句中的主要動詞之前,充當狀語的功能,因此,S1句式可視 為典型的介詞結構。按照常理而言,學習者對典型的S1句式掌握 應較S2句式容易,然而此項調查卻呈現相反的結果。筆者認為此 偏誤情況,該是受到母語的干擾所致。
- (5) 介詞"給 1"至"給"的語義功能的總偏誤數為 547,總偏誤為 30.3%左右。
- 4.1.4.2 介詞"給"的語法結構

 介詞"給1"的句式S1:S-給-X-V-O能轉換成句式S2:S-V-O-給X。

測試題:

- (1) 我剛坐下,他端了一杯水給我。
- (2) 學校寄了停課通知單給學生家長。
- (3) 如果有任何問題,請發電子郵件給我。

表 4-6: 介詞 "給 1" 句式 S1 能轉換 S2 之偏誤情況

調査結果	例有	(1)	例句	(2)	例句(3)		
調査對象	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	
A組(50人)	23	46	22	44	12	24	
B組(70人)	24	34.2	17	24.3	10	14.2	
合計(120人)	47	39.1	39	32.5	22	18.3	

從表 4-6 所顯示的介詞 "給 1" 句式 S1 轉換 S2 之偏誤情況,可以看出 上述的三個例句:

(1) 偏誤率最高的,不論A或B組,都是例句(1)"我剛坐下,他端 了一杯水給我",兩組平均為 39.1%。換句話說,39.1%的調查 對象認為句式S"我剛坐下,他給我端了一杯水"不能轉換成句式 S2"我剛坐下,他端了一杯水給我"。即,學習者此題答錯的比 例近40%。

- (2) 偏誤率最低的,不論A或B組,都是例句(3)"有任何問題,請 你发电子邮件給我",兩組平均為18.3%。換句話說,只有18.3%的調查對象認為句式S1"如果有任何問題,請給我發電子郵件"不能轉換成句式S2"如果有任何問題,請發電子郵件給 我"。即,學習者此題答錯的比例不超過20%。
- (3) B 組,即學習時間長的一組,在每個例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組,即學習時間少的一組。基本上, A、 B 兩組各個例句偏誤率 的差距約為 15%。

2) 介詞"給 2"的句式 S1: S - 給-X - V-O,又可分為兩種情況:一為 能轉換成 S2 句式 S - V-O - 給-X,如例句(1)、(2)和(3);另一為不能 轉換為 S2 句式,如例句(4)、(5)和(6)。 測試題:

- (1) 她帶了一個壞消息給大家,她的媽媽生了重病。
- (2) 媽媽遞個眼色給爸爸, 叫他別再說了。
- (3) 別著急,我馬上想個法子給你。
- (4)*睡覺前,母親念故事書給孩子。
- (5)*姐姐比賽得到第一名,大家道賀給她。
- (6)*這孩子每次看見我,老是做個鬼臉給我。

表 4-7: 介詞 "給 2" 句式 S1 轉換 S2 之偏誤情況 ("→"表示句式可以轉換; "≠"表示句式不可以轉換)

"给2." S1-→S2	例句 SL-) (1) → S2	例句 S1 →	(2) \$2	例句 S1 ·	(3) → S2	例句 S1	(4) ≠S2	例句 S1	(5) ≠ S2.	例句 S1	(6) ≠ S2
句式 測試 結果	偏誤數	百 分 比 %	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分 分 比 %	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百 分 比 %
A #1 (50/U)	17	34	29	58	19	38	20	40	19	38	26	52
B組 (70人)	31	44.2	36	51.4	19	27.1	13	18.5	23	32.8	33	47.1
合計 〈120人〉	48	40	65	54.1	38	31.6	33	27.5	42	35	59	49.1

從表 4-7 所顯示的介詞 "給 2" 句式 S1 轉換 S2 之偏誤情況,可以看出上述的六個例句:

- (1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組都是例句(2) "媽媽遞個眼色<u>給</u>爸爸,叫他別再說了",兩組平均為 54.1 %。換句話說,有超過半數的調查對象認為句式 S1 "媽媽<u>給</u>爸爸遞個眼色,叫他別再說了"不能轉換成句式 S2 "媽媽遞個眼色<u>給</u>爸爸,叫他別再說了"。即,學習者此例題答錯的比例超過 50 %。
- (2) 偏誤率最低的, A 和 B 組的調查結果並不相同。A 組是例句(1) "她帶了一個壞消息給大家,她的媽媽生了重病",為 34 %; B 組則是例句(4) "*睡覺前,母親念故事書給孩子",為18.5%。 然而平均兩組的偏誤率後,偏誤率最低的是例句(4),兩組平均 為 27.5%。換句話說,只有 27.5%的調查對象認為句式 S1 "睡覺 前,母親給孩子念故事書"是能轉換成句式 S2 "*睡覺前,母親念 故事書給孩子"的。即,學習者此題答錯的比例為 27.5%。
- (3)除了例句(1)的偏誤率是 B 組(44.2%)高於 A 組(34%)以
 外, B 組在其他的五個例句中的偏誤率都是低於 A 組。基本上,
 A、 B兩組在各個例句偏誤率的差距約為10%。

3) 介詞"給3"句式S1:S-給-X-V-O不能轉換成S2:S-V-O-給-X。

測試題:

(1)*你的頭髮長了,我理髮給你。

- (2)*我知道你今天要來,這道菜是專門做給你的。
- (3)*我們先送您去酒店休息,已經訂好了房間給您。

調査結果	例句) (1)	例句	(2)	例句(3)		
調查對象	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分代%	偏誤數	百分比%	
A 組 (50人)	9	18	45	90	14	28	
D組(70人)	7	10	67	95.7	22	31.4	
合計(120人)	16	13.3	112	93.3	36	30	

表 4-8: "給 3" 句式 S1 不能轉換 S2 之偏誤情況

從表 4-8 所顯示的介詞 "給 3" 句式 S1 轉換 S2 之偏誤情況,可以從上 述的三個例句:

- (1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(2) "*我知道你今天 要來, 這道菜是專門做給你的",兩組平均為 93.3 %,使用錯誤 的比例相當高。換言之,大多數的調查對象認為句式 S1 "我知道 你今天要來,這道菜是專門給你做的"能轉換成句式 S2 "*我知道 你今天要來,這道菜是專門做給你的",即,學習者此題答錯的比 例高達 93.3 %。而此句亦是兩組受訪者在 15 道 "給"的語法判斷 題中,偏誤率最高。
- (2) B 組在每個例句中的偏誤率,只有是例句(1)低於 A 組,而例句
 (2)及(3)的偏誤率都略高於 A 組。此測試結果,與 B 組在其
 他例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組的題兩組現象有所不同。

4) 介詞"給 4"句式 S1: S - 給- X - V- O 不能轉換成 S2: S - V- O- 給-X。

測試題:

- (1)*真糟糕,他弄丟了電影票給你。
- (2)*我感到很難過,砸了信譽給你。
- (3)*是我的疏忽大意,損失了十萬美金給你。

調査結果	例句) (1)	例有	1 (2)	例句(3)		
調査對象	偏誤數	百分比%	偏誤數	百分比%	偏課.數	百分比%	
A 組 (50人)	7	14	15	30	12	24	
B 組(70人)	4	5.7	14	20	12	17.1	
合計(120人)	11	9.1	29	24.1	24	20	

表 4-9: "給 4" 句式 S1 不能轉換成 S2 之偏誤情況

從表 4-9 所顯示的介詞 "給 4" 句式 S1 轉換 S2 之偏誤情況,可以看出 上述的三個例句:

(1) 偏誤率最高的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(2) "*我感到很難過,
 砸了信譽給你",兩組平均為 24.1%。換言之,24.1%的調查對象

認為句式 S1 "我感到很難過,給你砸了信譽"能轉換成句式 S2 "* 我感到很難過,砸了信譽給你"。即,學習者此題答錯的比例24.1%

- (2) 偏誤率最低的,不論 A 或 B 組,都是例句(1) "*真糟糕,他弄丟 了電影票給你",兩組平均為 9.1%。換言之,只有 9.1%的調查 對象認為句式 S1"真糟糕,他給你弄丟了電影票"能轉換成句式 S2 "*真糟糕,他弄丟了電影票給你"。即,學習者對此題"給 4"的 句式 S1不能轉換句式 S2 的語法點掌握,正確率相當高,答錯的比 例不超過 10%。而此例句亦是兩組受訪者在"給"語義判斷 15 道題 中,偏誤率最低的。
- (3) B 組在每個例句中的偏誤率都低於 A 組。基本上, A、 B 兩組在各 個例句偏誤率的差距約為 9 % 左右。

小結二

筆者將上面所分析介詞"給 1"至"給 4"的語法結構之句式 S1 能否轉換成 S2 的分項偏誤率,加以匯整如下頁表 4-10 所示:

表 4-10: "給 1"至 "給 4" 語法結構句式 S1 轉換成 S2 的分項偏誤之比較
 ("→"表示可以轉換: "≠"表示不可以轉換)

"給" S1,S2			總數1	800 题	(A維	1750题+	B組10	50题)		an an
句式轉換	給1 (×3题)	給2(×3题)	給2(×3題)	給3 (×3题)	給4 (×3題)	
	S1 -	→ S2	S1 → S2		S1 ≠ S2		S1 ≠ S2		S1 ≠ S2	
	A 組: 150 題 B 組: 210 題		A組: 150題 B組: 210題		A組: 150題 B組: 210題		A 組: 150 題 B 組: 210 題		A 組: 150 題 B 組: 210 題	
	偏誤	百分比%	偏誤	百分比%	偏 誤	百分比%	偏誤	百分比%	偏誤	百分比 %
偏誤率	數		数		X		数		数	
A 組: 50人	57	38	65	43.3	65	43.3	68	45.3	34	22.9
B组:70人	51	24.3	86	40.9	69	32.8	96	45.7	30	14.2
合計 120人、	108	30	151	41.9	134	37.2	164	45.5	64	17.7
總偏誤數		<u> </u>		<u> </u>	621	-				
總偏誤率					34.5%					

從表 4-10 可顯示介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之語法結構句式 S1 轉換成 S2 的分項偏誤情況:

(1) A、B兩組在"給1"至"給4"之語法結構句式S1能否轉換成S2 所呈現的偏誤情況,相當一致,即,不論是A或B組在"給1"至"
"給4"各個分項的偏誤率的排序是相同的。其偏誤率由低至高的排 序如下圖4-2所示:



- (2) 由上圖得知: S1 能否轉換成 S2 偏誤率最高的是"給 3",兩組平均為 45.5%。換言之,接近半數的學習者答錯此類的題目,即,對 "給 3"的 S1 不轉換成 S2 句式的語法點掌握之困難度最大。而偏 誤率最低的是"給 4",兩組平均為 17.7%,即,學習者對"給 4" 的 S1 不能轉換成 S2 句式的語法點掌握,大致正確。
- (3) B 組,即學習時間長的一組在每個例句中的偏誤率大致上都低於 A 組,即學習時間長的一組。基本上, A、 B 兩組在各個例句偏誤率 的差距約為 7 % 左右。表示學習者在習得之前和習得之後,在介詞 "給"的語法結構方面的掌握有所差異。
- (4) 對帶有相同語義"給 2"在 S1 可轉換成 S2 句式以及 S1 不可轉換成 S2 句式, A、 B兩組的平均偏誤率分別為 41.9%和 37.2%。由此 可見,兩組受訪者對 S1 不可轉換成 S2 句式的掌握較好於 S1 可轉換 成 S2 句式。
- (5) "給1"至"給4" 語法結構句式 S1 轉換成 S2 的總偏誤數 621,總 偏誤率為 34.5%。
4. 1. 4. 2 泰國大學生使用介詞 "給" 的偏誤之因

根據上述泰國大學生對介詞"給"的不同語義特徵和句法功能之實際掌握 情形的調查結果,本文發現 B 組在語義和語法中的偏誤率大致上都低於 A 組, 表示經由適當的習得之後,學習者能夠比較正確地掌握"給"的使用方式。筆 者認為泰國大學生使用介詞"給"之偏誤原因,可分為以下兩項因素:

- 第一、"給"字本身具有的複雜語義特徵和多重語法功能。介詞"給"至少 具有四種不同的語義功能;與介詞"給"有關的句式亦有三種,而句 式間的轉換情形,又受到每種句式中動詞的搭配和介詞賓語的轉移過 程的限制。
- 第二、學生在習得過程中,受到母語干擾而造成的偏誤現象。筆者觀察到大多數的漢泰詞典或教材都將漢語的"給 1"的語義釋譯為"\vi"(發音/hâj/),而泰語介詞"\vi"/hâj/的句法基本上都是"S V-O-\vi/hâj/X"句式,即,介詞"\vi"/hâj/只能出現在動詞後作補語。所以,泰語學習者在使用漢語"給"句式時,很容易直接將泰語"\vi"/hâj/的句法轉換成漢語。尤其是"S 給 X V-O"是泰語與漢語不能對應的句式,學生的正確使用率相當低。

4.2 介詞 "給"的教學應用及建議

本章節是本論文的教學應用面,在第三章的理論語法層面分析了介詞 "給"的諸多意義與用法之後,本章將要討論介詞"給"在教學上的一些考量 因素,訂定介詞"給"的合適教學排序。理論部分主要參考鄧守信(2002)的 說法,將教學語法視為理論語法的延伸,是個全面性的學習者導向的系統。筆 者將從母語者的使用頻率、介詞"給"字本身的困難度以及學習者偏誤等方向 來討論。並且根據鄧的教學語法理論,針對以泰語為母語的華語學習者編寫介 詞"給"的教學語法。 4.2.1 教學語法理論架構

教學語法在應用語言學中是一門較新的領域。Odlin(1994)對"教學語法"(pedagogical grammar)下的定義是"針對第二語言學習者的需要而設計的語法分析和教程"¹⁶。為了達到這個目標,他認為教學語法必須連接許多不同領域,包含理論語法、第二語言習得等等。Odlin 提出的主要是教學語法的初步概念,而鄧守信則根據這些基礎,進一步發展成漢語作為第二語言的教學語法規則內容。教學語法是為教學者同時也是為學習者所設計的,屬於應用語言學中第二語言教育的範圍。鄧指出,教學語法是以語法規則為基礎,以學習者為導向,是一種規範性、累進式的教學語法。

本小節主要探討的是介詞"給"的教學排序問題。教學語法理論主張語法 的教學是類進式,藉由語法點的排序,則能反映出教學語法的累進性質,因為 "累進"是將語法點組織成不同的等級,而"排序"則是個等級內獨立處理的 問題。鄧提到教學排序不應該只根據教師的經驗,而應當採用科學化的依據, 也就是從語言本身和語言學習中的種種變因來考慮。筆者根據鄧所提出與語法 點的排序相關的原則,作為本文對語法點的排序依據。這四項原則如下所示:

(1) 使用頻率

若 A 在自然語言中出現頻率高於 B,則學習者習得的順序應該先 A, 然後再 B。筆者認為使用頻率最高的"給",表示母語者在實際日常 生活中的使用次數最為頻繁,教師應該優先教學生。

- (2) 結構與語義的複雜度
 - 結構愈複雜表示困難度愈高,語義愈複雜亦表示困難度愈高,而語義 的困難度愈又高於結構的困難度。即,若 A 的結構(語義)比 B 複 雜,則學習者習得的順序應該先學習 B,然後再學習 A 。鄧所謂的複 雜度,筆者認為是針對語言本身的難度而言。

(3) 跨語言距離

跨語言距離愈大,表示困難度愈高。第一語言和第二語言之間可以正

¹⁶ "The term pedagogical grammar usually denotes the type of grammatical analysis and instruction designed for the need of second language students." (Odlin 1994: 1)

面轉換的結構,表示學習者可以較少的努力習得該結構,教師應該優 先教學生。即,若 A 的跨語言差距比 B 小,則學習者習得的順序應 該先學習 A, 然後再學習 B。換言之,應該就學習者在習得過程中, 受到母語的干擾造成的偏誤大小,來設計教學順序。

(4) 語言習得發展過程

第一語言和第二語言習得的過程發展順序,也可以作為教學語法排序的 參考依據之一。筆者觀察到以泰語為母語的華語學習者之語言習得過程 中,有一值得注意的現象是,大多數的華語學習者在學習漢語之前,已 經具備了習得英語的經驗,因此奠定了基本的第二語言習得之基礎,包 括習得漢語。

本文將在下面幾個小節中,結合華語母語者的使用頻率、介詞結構與語義 困難度和學習者在習得過程中之偏誤現象等專項內容,決定介詞"給"的教學 順序。

4.2.2 "給"字的使用頻率

關於華語母語者對"給"字使用頻率之調查,筆者以中央平衡語料庫的資料為主。檢索結果,一共得到三千七百六十二條,因為目標樣本太大,因此本 文採取其中前一千兩百條語料作為主要的語料分析來源。現代漢語"給"字使 用頻率之調查結果,如表 4 - 11 所示:

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

表 4-11: "給"各項語義、語法點語料出現之頻率

		出現頻率	平衡語	料庫(12	00條)
n			出現	比例	頻率
分類	(語表功能與語法結構)		次數		排名
給1	引介實體事物的接收	S1: S - 給 - X - V- O	56	4.67 %	3
	者(終點格)	S2: S - V- O - 給 - X	207	17.25 %	1
		S3: S-V-給-X-O	7	0.58 %	6
		合計	270		
給2	引介抽象事物或行為	S1: S - 給 - X - V- O	176	14.66 %	2
	動作牽涉的接收者	S2: S - V- O - 給- X	37	3.08 %	5
	(S3: S - V- 給 - X – O	1	0.08 %	8
	く えん 当上 コート	合計	214		
給3	引介某種獲益行為動	S1: S - 給 - X - V- O	55	4.58 %	4
and the second	作或事件的受事者	S2: S-V-O-給-X	0	0	
		S3: S-V-給-X-O	0	0	
	(受惠格)	合計	55		
給4	引介某種虧損動作行	S1: S-給-X-V-O	5	0.41 %	7
	為 可 事 件 的 受 損 者	S2: S - V- O - 給 - X	0	0	
		S3: S - V- 給 - X - O	0	0	-
T. S.	(受損對象)	合計	5		
其他	動詞"給"/表處置式				
1	的"給"/把字句 <mark>的</mark>	9.4 <u>44()</u> 2009.4			
	"給"/ 表被動"給 <mark>"</mark>	合計	656		
總計		and an an an an	1200		

由上表看出在中央平衡語料庫中, "給 1"至 "給 4"的各項語義的語料出 現頻率之排名由高至低, 排序如下:

- 1. "給1"(270條)
- 2. "給 2" (214 條)
- 3. "給3" (55條)
- 4. "給4" (5條)

換言之,引介實體事物的接收者(終點格)的"給 1"之使用頻率最高; 引介抽象事物或行為動作牽涉的接收者(終點格)的"給 2"之使用頻率其 次;引介某種獲益行為動作或事件的受惠者(受惠格)的"給 3"之使用頻率 為第三;而引介某種虧損動作行為或事件的受損者(受損對象)的"給 4"之 使用頻率最低。若結合"給"的各項語義和語法點來看, "給 1"至"給 4"與 S1、S2 以及 S3 句式一共有 544 條語料,出現頻率之排名由高至低排序如下:

"給 1"的 S2: "S-V-O-給-X" (207條,占 1200條的 17.25%)
 "給 2"的 S1: "S-給-X-V-O" (176條,占 1200條的 14.66%)
 "給 3"的 S1: "S-給-X-V-O" (56條,占 1200條的 4.67%)
 "給 1"的 S1: "S-給-X-V-O" (55條,占 1200條的 4.58%)
 "給 2"的 S2: "S-V-O-給-X" (37條,占 1200條的 3.08%)
 "給 1"的 S3: "S-V-給-X-O" (5條,占 1200條的 0.58%)
 "給 4"的 S1: "S-給-X-V-O" (5條,占 1200條的 0.41%)
 "給 2"的 S3: "S-V-給-X-O" (1條,占 1200條的 0.08%)

筆者將上述的調查結果之出現頻率由高至低排序,整理成圖 4-3:

給1 (S2) →給2 (S1) →給1 (S1) →給3 (S1) →給2 (S2) →給1 (S3) →給4 (S1)

圖 4-3: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 與 S1、S2、S3 句式的語料出現頻率之排序

由上圖的排序得知: "給 1" S2 句型的使用頻率最高; "給 2" S1 句型的 使用頻率其次; "給 3" S1 句型的使用頻率和 "給 1" S1 句型的使用頻率相 同,列為第三; "給 2" S2 句型的使用頻率為第五; 而 "給 1" S3 句型的使用 頻率為第六; 而 "給 4" S1 句型的使用頻率最低。

4. 2. 3 "給"的語義和語法難度

如上小節所述,鄧(2002)認為影響語法點序列的因素共有四項,而他將 其中的複雜度又擴展為困難度,可分為以下五個原則來判定:

1. 結構:結構越複雜,困難度越高。

2. 語義: 語義越複雜, 困難度越高。

3. 跨語言:跨語言差距越大,困難度越高。

4. 類化(系統化):越不易類化者,困難度越高。

5. 語用(互動義):語用功能越強,困難度越高。

筆者認為透過問卷調查來觀察泰國華語學習者對介詞"給"的實際使用情 形,較能發現華語學習者在"給"的語義和句法方面,除了"給"字的複雜性 因素以外,是否由於跨語言的因素亦造成他們在學習上的難點。因此,本文將 依據上述問卷調查的結果,將泰國大學生使用"給"的偏誤情況結合"給"字 本身的複雜度來探討"給"的困難度。討論的方法是先分項列出四類介詞 "給"語義、結構方面的複雜度之後,再分別綜合泰國大學生對"給"在語 義、結構方面使用之偏誤率,最後得出語義、結構困難度的排名。困難度的排 名依據是參照上述鄧守信所提的1至3條原則,並且使1到5的數位來表示, 若數位越大表示困難度越高,若數字相同則表示困難度排名大致相同。

介詞"給"之語義困難度

筆者根據第三章在理論語法層面分析介詞"給"語義特徵的結果(見表 3 -4)得知: "給 1"和"給 2" 其語義標記皆為終點格, "給 3"的語義標記為受惠格,而"給 4"的語義標記則為引介出受損對象。筆者對介詞"給 1"
至"給 4"各項語義的複雜度之比較,以討論如下:

- 1) "給 1"的語義功能為引介某實體事物的接收對象,表"給予"之 義,是"給"的基本語義。鄧守信(1998)討論語法排序時,認為結 構上的依存性(structure-dependent)是一項排序的標準,也就是應當 從基本結構到延伸結構,從包孕結構到上層結構,從核心結構到週邊 結構。而筆者認為鄧提出的結構排序依據,其實應用於語義上也是類 似的,基本語義一定先於延伸語義。本文中曾提到某些例句¹⁷中引介 終點格的"給1"亦可以用"為"、"幫"和"替"來代替,並可能 產生歧義。因此,"給 1"其語義複雜度在四類"給"中並非最低 的,但理當低於具有延伸語義的"給"。
- 2) "給 2"的語義功能為引介出動作牽涉的對象或抽象事物接收對象, 表"向"、"對"、"跟"之義。在第三章中,本文曾指出"給 2" 所引介動作行為大多與"話語"和"視覺"等非具體的實物有關, 即,在使用"給 2"時,學習者必須要先能夠對何謂"抽象事物"的

¹⁷ 見本文第三章的例句(23),(25),(26),(27)和(30)。

概念有所理解。此外, "給 2"所搭配的動詞範圍大致上屬於"表達 類動詞" (見表 3-3, 第 24 頁), 而這類動詞進入 S1 句式, 句子 會產生歧義。再者, "表達類動詞"既不能進入 S2 句式亦不能進入 S3 句式。按照常理來判斷, 一個語法點的搭配限制越嚴, 其困難度 應該越高。由上述的說明, 筆者認為"給 2"的語義複雜度應該是四 類"給"中最高的。

- 3) "給 3"的語義功能引介某獲益動作行為或事件的受益對象,表 "為"、"替"、"幫"之義。是"給 1"基本義"給予"的延伸語 義,即,給予或提供某種受益動作行為或事件。根據第二章湯提 出:漢語的"給"是異義詞,可進一步區分為"對象標記"的 "給"和"施惠標記"的"給"。學習者若要確定句子中的"給"是 否為具有施惠義的"給 3",還需要視上下文的語境而定。例如: "我給你送午飯來了"句中的"給"有可能是表示"對象標記" (即,本文的終點格)的,若此句的上下文的語境"我給你送午飯來 了,一共兩百塊錢";相對地,若是上下文的語境是"我給你送午 飯來了,因為你沒有時間去買",句中的"給"即是表"施惠標 記"的"給 3"。由此可見,"給 3"所具有的施惠語義之不確定 性,會造成學習者對"給"語義的理解產生困擾。因此,筆者認為 "給 3"的語義複雜度應該算是四類"給"中第二高的。
 - 4) "給 4"的語義功能引介某虧損動作行為或事件的受害對象,相當於 "害"之義。基本上,筆者認為"給 4"所具有的"損害"語義是相 當清楚而明顯的,因為在上述本文所列舉的例句¹⁸中,"給 4"的語 義特徵都只表現出單一的語義功能"引介出受損對象",因此不會 造成句子產生歧義。相較之下,"給 4"的語義複雜度應該是四類 "給"中最低的。

筆者將上述討論結果中介詞 "給 1"至 "給 4"各項語義複雜度由低至高,分別以 1, 2, 3, 4 表示,如下表 4-12 所示:

18 見本文第三章的例句(55),(56),(57),(58)和(59)。

表 4-12: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之語義複雜度 (S1 表 "S - 給-X-V-O" 句式; S2 表 "S-V-O- 給-X" 句式)

分類	給1 (SI)	給1(S2)	給2(S1)	給3 (S1)	給4 (S1)
語義	引介實體事	引介實體事	引介抽象事	引介某種獲	引介某種虧損
	物的接收者	物的接收者	物或行為動	益行為動作	動作行為或事
	<u>終點格</u>	終點格	作牽涉的接	或事件的受	件的受害者
			收者	惠者	<u>受損對象</u>
		1	<u>終點格</u>	<u> 受惠格</u>	
語義複雜度	2	2	4	3	1

將上表"給1"至"給4"各項語義複雜度的討論結果,與本文的問卷調查結 果中泰國大學生使用介詞"給"語義的偏誤率排序(見上圖4-1)結合後,得 出介詞"給"的困難度排名,如下表4-13所示:

(S1 表	(S1 表 "S - 給-X - V - O" 句式; S2 表 "S - V - O - 給-X" 句式						
分類	給1(S1)	給1 (S2)	給2(SI)。	給3(S1)	給4.(S1)		
語義	終點格	終點格	終點格	受惠格	受損對象		
	引介 <mark>實</mark> 體事	引介實體事	引介抽象事物	引介某種獲	引介某種虧		
	物的接收者	物的接收者	或行為動作牽	益行為動作	損動作行為		
		135540.219/1	涉的接收者	或事件的受	或事件的受		
		a sum un u		惠者	損者		
語義複雜度	2	2	4	3	1		
偏誤率排名19	5	3	4	2	1		
語義困難度積分20	7	5	8	5	2		
語義困難度排名	3	2	4	2	1		

表 4-13: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之語義困難度排名 表 "S-給-X-V-O" 句式: S2表 "S-V-O-給-X" 句

由上表看出: 在 S1 句式中, "給 4"的語義困難度最低, 其次是"給 1"的 S1 句式和"給 3"的語義困難度並列為第二, "給 1"的 S2 句式語義困難度 為第四, "給 2"的語義困難度最高。筆者將介詞"給 1"至"給 4"在 S1 句 式中的語義困難度由低至高的排序如下圖 4-4:

¹⁹ 偏誤率的排名, 根據偏誤率的資料, 以數位1到5由低到高排名。

²⁰ 積分越多表示困難度越高。



圖 4-4: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 語義困難度之排序

由上述排序的結果可見,學習者對"給 4"的語義掌握最容易,其次是 "給 1"的 S1 句式以及"給 3,再來是"給 1"在 S1 句式,而對"給 2"在 S1 句式中的語義掌握是最為困難的。

介詞"給"之語法困難度

本文在第三章 3. 6. 5 小節中曾對帶有介詞"給"三種句式轉換受限的現 象,提出以下的概括: 一般而言,一個語法點的搭配限制越嚴,其困難度應該 越高,S1"S-給-X-V-O"句式,在此三句式中受限程度最小; S2"S-V-O-給-X"句式受限程度居中; 而S3"S-給-V-O-X"的句式受限程度最 高。

回溯上表 3-4 (第 45 頁)的結論顯示:大多數的"給 1"、"給 2"、 "給 3"和"給 4"皆可以進入 S1 句式而成為合語法的句子,但是只有"給1" 的 S1 的句式能夠轉換成 S2 和 S3 的句式; "給 3"和"給 4"的 S1 句式都不 能轉換成 S2 和 S3 的句式;相較於"給 1"的 S2 句式,而"給 2"的 S2 句式 能否轉能從 S1 轉換而成,卻還需要視句中的轉移物轉移和到達的過程是否為同 步而定,因而提高了結構上的複雜度。筆者將三種句式的複雜度由低至高,分 別以 1, 2, 3,4表示,如下表 4-14 所示:

結構分類 給1	給1	給1	給2	給2	給3	給4
S1句式	S2句式	S3句式	S1句式	S2句式	S1句式	\$1句式
結構複雜度 1	2	4	1	3	1	1

表4-14: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之結構複雜度

此外,泰國大學生使用介詞"給"之語法結構句式 S1 轉換成 S2 的偏誤情況由調查(見圖 4-2)發現,他們對於"給 4"的 S1 不能轉換成 S2 句式之正

確掌握情況為最好;其次是"給1"的S1 能轉換成S2 句式,表示對S1和S2 句式的掌握情況相同;之後是"給2"的S1 能轉換成和不能轉換成S2 句式; 而掌握最差的是"給3"的S1 不能轉換成S2 句式。筆者結合上述"給"的結 構複雜度²¹和偏誤率排名結果,得出介詞"給"的結構困難度,整理成表4-15,如下所示:

結構分類	給1 S1句式	給1 S2句式	給2 S1句式	給2 S2句式	給3 S1句式	給4 S1句式
結構複雜度	1	2	1	3	1	1
偏誤率排名	2	2	3	4	5	1
結構困難度積分22	3	4	4	7	6	2
結構困難度排名	2	3	3	5	4	1

表 4-15: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 之結構困難度排名 (S1 表 "S-給-X-V-O" 句式; S2 表 "S-V-O-給-X" 句式)

由上表看出: "給 4"的 S1 句式結構困難度最低,表示學習者對 "給 4" 的 S1 句式結構最容易掌握;其次是 "給 1"的 S1 句式結構; 再者是 "給 1" S1 句式結構和 "給 2"的 S1 句式結構之困難度排名同為第三; "給 3"的 S1 句式 結構困難度為第四; 而 "給 2"的 S2 句式結構困難度最高。筆者將介詞 "給 1"至 "給 4"的 S1、S2 結構句式困難度由低至高的排序,整理如下圖 4-5 所 示;



²¹表中的"給3"S2句式,因問卷調查中無此題項,所以不做比較。 ²²積分越多表示困難度越高。

4. 2. 4 "給"的教學語法排序

教學語法的語法規則內容是以學習者為導向,專為學習者而設計。Odlin (1994) 曾提到教學語法規則編寫的原則如下:

- (1) 明確性(concrete), 語法解說清楚。
- (2) 簡易性(simple), 語法內容越簡單越好。
- (3) 非專業化(non-technical),儘量使用生活用語來解釋。
- (4) 累進式(cumulative),使語法點能在最後階段達到百分之百的學習目標。

本文的排序主要針對系統內排序(intra-sequencing)討論,也就是在教學 上的四個介詞"給"彼此之間的排序。在上兩小節中,本文已就使用頻率、語 法點困難度和學習者偏誤率等各方面進行了討論;在本小節中將依據上列的三 項因素,訂出介詞"給"的系統內排序。為了符合本文問卷所調查"給"在語 義方面的題項,筆者先將前兩小節的語料出現頻率之排序結果(見表 4-11),選取與問卷相關的使用頻率,由高至低重新排序如圖 4-6所示:

給1 (S2) ⇒給2 (S1) ⇒給1 (S1) ⇒給3 (S1) ⇒給4 (S1)

圖 4-6: 介詞 "給 1" 至 "給 4" 與 S1、S2 句式的語料出現頻率之排序

筆者根據上圖 4-4:介詞"給"各項語義、語法點的語料使用頻率之調查, 以及上兩小節中介詞"給"的語義及結構困難度之評定排序(見圖 4-4 和 4-5),將兩者結果加以匯整後,訂出介詞"給"的系統內排序,如下表 4-12。 此外,加上跨語言差距因素的考量,做為介詞"給"教學排序的參考。

分類	給1 S1句式	給1 S2句式	給2 S1句式	給3 S1句式	給4 S1句式
語義困難度	3	2	4	2	1
結構困難度	2	3	3	4	1
使用排名23	3	1	2	4	5
總積分24	8	6	9	10	7
總排名	3	1	4	5	2

表 4-12:介詞 "給"之系統內排序 (S1表 "S-給-X-V-O"句式;S2表 "S-V-O-給-X"句式)

按照表 4-12 所顯示,筆者將介詞"給"的教學排序整理成下圖 4-7 所示。然而"給"字系統內的考量因素,還需要對學習者的跨語言差距因素有所 考量,才能作出對學習者較為合適的教學排序。在 4.1.4 調查結果的結論 中,本文提出泰國大學生使用介詞"給"之偏誤原因,除了"給"字本身具有 的複雜語義特徵和多重語法功能以外,還有學習者在習得過程中,受到母語的 干擾造成的偏誤現象。

圖 4-7: 介詞 "給"之教學排序

根據前文中鄧守信對語法點的排序依據之一的跨語言差距因素,我們同意 第一語言和第二語言之間可以正面轉換(positive transfer)的結構,表示學習者 可以較少的努力習得該結構,教師應該優先教學生。即,筆者認為在教授泰語 學習者介詞"給"時,能與泰語"號"/hâj/的語法結構作正面轉換"給1"的 "S2: S-V-O-給-X"句式應當比"S1: S-給-X-V-O"句式優先教授。此 看法亦和本文所提出有關介詞"給"的教學排序相符合,因此,筆者認為上圖 4-5 中的"給1 (S2)"→"給 4 (S1)"→"給 1 (S1)"→"給 2 (S1)"→"給 3 (S1)"是適用于教授以泰語為母語的華語學習者所學習的 "給"之教學排序。換言之,建議教師在教授介詞"給"時,從泰語為母語的

²³ 出現率的排名,根據出現率的資料,以數位1到5由高到低排名。

²⁴ 總積分越低,表示教學順序越優先。

華語學習者所熟悉的 S2 句式優先, 然後再教典型的介詞片語句式 S1。而在句式 S1中, 應當先教只有單一語義的 "給 4", 其次為基本義的 "給 1", 再者 為需判斷介詞賓語是具體或抽象的 "給 2", 最後才教帶有歧義的 "給 3"。

此外,教師在教授的過程中,需要格外注意一個比較特別的現象,即,泰 語為母語的華語學習者能借助先行習得第二語言的經驗,來推動他們學習漢語 的過程。相對地,筆者認為以泰語為母語的華語學習者,在學習漢語的過程中 所產生的偏誤現象,除了受到其母語"泰語"的干擾之外,也很有可能受到第 二語言"英語"的影響。



ศูนยวิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

第五章

結論

本論文主要是探討介詞"給"的語義、語法和教學排序。首先,本文依據 臺灣中研院平衡語料庫和北京現代漢語料庫的語料將介詞"給"的傳統語義重 新分類為四大類,並藉由"格語法"和認知語法理論"句式語法"的理論為指 導,探討介詞"給"的不同語義特徵和語法結構中句式間轉換之受限原因。其 次,本文通過問卷調查,瞭解泰語學習者在介詞"給"語義和語法上的學習難 處。最後,將泰語學習者使用介詞"給"的偏誤情況與介詞"給"的語義複雜 度和"給"的語法難度相互結合,由此結果提出合適的教學排列順序。本章節 為總結本論文的研究內容,並說明研究過程中所產生的限制與未盡之處。

5.1 研究結論

综合上述四個章節對介詞"給"所進行的各項相關探討和研究之後,本文 得出結論分述如下。

5. 1. 1 介詞 "給" 的語義特徵

由格語法的角度得知,介詞"給"有兩種語義角色,一為"終點格",另 一為"受惠格"。"終點格"的定義為"某個個體經歷移位後所到達的地 點";而"受惠格"則具有"為了.....的利益"、"代替"的語義特徵。

本文將格語法理論對"終點格"的定義對擴展為"施事者發出的動作行為 並使某物移位之所既定的點"。我們認為終點格的"給"其引介的"給予事 物"不僅是空間領域的實體,也可以是非空間領域的動作行為,甚至還可延伸 至話語領域的抽象訊息。本文依據格語法理論將介詞"給"的傳統語義重新分 為四大類,如下所示:

(1) "給1", 語義角色為終點格, 語義特徵為引介某實體事物的接收對

象,表"給予"之義。

- (2) "給 2", 語義角色為終點格, 語義為引介出動作牽涉的對象或抽象事物接收對象, 表"向"、"對"、"跟"之義。
- (3) "給 3", 語義角色為受惠格, 語義特徵為引介某獲益動作行為或事件 的受益對象, 表"為"、"替"、"幫"之義。
- (4) "給 4",語義特徵為引介某虧損動作行為或事件的受害對象,相當於"害"之義。

這四種語義特徵各有所異的"給"所構成的句式,其句式間的轉換現象亦 有所不同,將在下面提出其差異情況。

5. 1. 2 介詞 "給"的語法功能

基於句式語法理論的概念,我們認為介詞"給"所表現出的整體句式之基本定義為"有意的給與性轉移"。本文進一步將句式語法理論所提出與介詞 "給"相關的三種基本句式,擴展其句式意義如下所示:

- (1) "S1: S 給- X- V-O",表轉移物(介詞賓語)的擁有權尚未轉
 移。所有的"給 1"至"給 4"皆能進入 S1 句式而成為合語法的句子。
- (2) "S2: S-V-O-給-X",表轉移物(介詞賓語)的擁有權已轉移, 轉移的發生和完成時間非同步。所有的"給"1和某些的"給 2"能 進入 S2 句式;但是"給 3"和"給 4"均不能進入 S2 句式。
- (3) "S3: S-V-給-X-O",表轉移物(介詞賓語)的擁有權已轉移, 轉移的發生和完成時間同步。某些"給 1"和"給 2"能進入 S3 式;但是"給 3"和"給 4"均不能進入 S3 句式。
- 5. 1. 3 "給"的句式轉換受限之因

本文發現語義特徵互異的四類 "給"在 S1、S2 和 S3 三種句式中,句式轉換受限的現象亦有所不同,筆者歸納轉換受限之因,如下表 5-1 所示:

語	編構	語義特徴	給1 (終點格) 引介實體 事物的受 物者	給2 (終點格) 引介加象 事物或行為動作者 形 者	給3 (受惠格) 引介某種 資介某種 動作或專 件 的受惠 者	給4 引介某種 虧損行為 動作或事 件 者
	轉移物	先前已存在		1	✓	1
SI 句	為抽象	先前不存在	1	1	1	1
式	轉移到達	同步	1	-	✓	~
		非同步	-		✓	✓
	動詞搭配		1		✓	~
and the second s	轉移物	先前已存在	/ <	1	×	×
S2	有地系	先前不存在	1	√/×	×	×
句	轉移到達	非同步	1	~	×	×
式	迎柱	同步,	*	×	×	×
	動詞搭配		1	×	×	×
	轉移物	先前已存在	1	1	×	×
S3 行	為抽象	先前不存在	1	√/×	×	×
式	轉移到	非同步	1	1	×	×
	達過程	同步	~	×	×	×
	動詞搭配		×	×	×	×

表 5-1: "給 1"至 "給 4"的語義特徵和 S1、S2 和 S3 句式轉換受限原因之比較 ("✓"表示: 轉換不受限制, "★": 轉換受限制, "✓/★": 轉換可能受限制)

本文對"給"的 S1、S2 和 S3 句式轉換受限的原因,得到以下的結論:

- (1) 本文認為 S1 和 S2 句式間轉換受限的原因,並非如前輩學者所主張 "轉移物不是實體,是不能給予的"說法,即,"轉移物為實體或 抽象"不是造成"給"句式轉換受限的原因。
- (2)本文提出"轉移物在動作行為發生前存在與否"和"轉移物轉移和 到達過程為同步或非同步"這兩個因素是影響"給"句式轉換受限 的原因。此外,介詞"給"在S3句式中亦會受限於所搭配動詞(動)

詞組)本身所具有的語義特徵,換言之,S1和S2是否能轉換成S3 句式的受限因素,還包括了S3句式中"給"所搭配的動詞(動詞 組)的語義特徵。

- (3) "S1: S 給-X V-O"的句式,在此三句式中受限程度最小。基本 上,所有的"給 1"至"給 4"皆能夠進入 S1 句式而成為合語法的 句子。
- (4) "S2: S-V-O-給-X"的句式,在此三句式中受限程度居中。某些
 "給 2"及所有"給 3"和"給 4"均不能進入 S2 句式。當"轉移動 作行為發生前不存在並且轉移物轉和到達過程為同步"時,會造成 "給 2"無法進入 S2 句式。
- (5) "S3: S -給-V-O-X"的句式,在三種句式中受限程度最高。 某些"給1"和"給2"及所有"給3"和"給4"均不能進入S2 句式。當受到"向內動詞"動詞組語義特徵的限制時,"給1"不 能進入S3句式,而當"轉移物在動作行為發生前不存在並且轉移 物轉移到達過程為同步"時,會造成"給2"無法進入S3句式。 因此,決定S3句式受限的原因,不單涵蓋了上述S2的受限因素 "轉移物在動作行為發生前存在與否"和"轉移物轉移和達到過程 為同步或非同步"以外,還包括"V-給"受其動詞搭配所限制的 因素。
- 5.2 介詞"給"的教學建議

5. 2. 1 偏誤排序

根據本文的問卷調查結果,發現泰國大學生使用介詞"給"之偏誤情形如下:

偏誤排序	低 高
語義功能	$ 給4 \implies 給3 \Longrightarrow 給1(S2) \Longrightarrow 給2 \implies 給1(S1) $
語法結構 (S1 轉換成 S2 句式)	

- (1) 在語義方面,偏誤排序由低而高為: "給 4", "給 3", "給 1
 (S2)", "給 2"以及"給 1 (S1)"。即,學習者對 "給 4"
 在 S1 句式的語義掌握最正確; 而對 "給1"在 S1 句式的語義掌握最
 困難。
- (2) 在語法結構句式S1 轉換成 S2 方面,偏誤排序由低而高為: "給4
 (S1 不能轉換 S2) ", "給1 (S1 能轉換 S2)", "給 2 (S1 能
 轉換 S2) ", "給 2 (S1不能轉換 S2)"以及 "給3 (S1不能轉 S2)"。即,學習者對 "給 4"的句式 S1 不能轉換 S2 的語法點掌握,較為正確; 而對 "給 3"在 S1 不能轉換 S2的語法點掌握困難度較大。
- 5. 2. 2 產生偏誤的主要原因
- (1) "給"字本身具有的複雜語義特徵和多重語法功能。介詞"給"至 少具有四種不同的語義功能;與介詞"給"有關的句式亦有三種, 而句式間的轉換情形,又受到每種句式中動詞的搭配和介詞賓語的 轉移過程的限制。
- (2) 學生在習得過程中,受到母語"泰語"的干擾而產生偏誤。泰語介 詞"\vi"/hâj/的句法基本上都是"S-V-O-"\vi"/hâj/-X"句式, 即,介詞"\vi"/hâj/只能出現在動詞後作補語。因此,泰語學習者 在使用漢語"給"句式時,很容易直接將泰語"\vi"/hâj/的句法轉 換成漢語,尤其是使用泰語與漢語不能對應的句式"S-給-X-V-O"時,學生的正確使用率相當低。

5. 2. 3 介詞"給"的教學排序

本文根據平衡語料庫中介詞"給"各項語義、語法點的使用頻率之統計資料,以及本文對介詞"給"的語義及結構困難度之評定排序,將兩者結果加以 匯整後,訂出介詞"給"的系統內排序,最後加上跨語言差距因素的考量,針 對以泰語為母語的學習者提出介詞"給"教學的先後順序如下所示:



建議教師在教授介詞"給"時,從泰語為母語的華語學習者所熟悉的 S2 句 式優先,然後再教典型的介詞片語句式 S1。而在句式 S1 中,應當先教只有單 一語義的"給 4",其次為基本義的"給 1",再者為需判斷介詞賓語是具體或 抽象的"給 2",最後才教帶有歧義的"給 3"。即,教師應先教使用頻繁、結 構與語義複雜度低而學習者所熟悉的語法點;而後教使用少、結構與語義複雜 度高而學習者無法做正面轉換的語法點。

此外,第一語言和第二語言習得的過程發展順序,也可以作為教學語法排 序的參考依據之一。本文發現以泰語為母語的華語學習者之語言習得過程中,大 多數的學習者在學習漢語之前,已經具備了習得英語的經驗,因此奠定了基本的 第二語言習得之基礎。即,泰語為母語的華語學習者能借助先行習得第二語言的 經驗,來推動他們學習漢語的過程。相對地,本文也認為以泰語為母語的華語學 習者,在學習漢語的過程中除了受到母語"泰語"的干擾之外,也很有可能受到 第二語"英語"的干擾而產生偏誤現象。因此,華語教師在教學時,也需要考慮 第二語言"英語",對華語學習者在學習漢語過程中可能造成的正面和負面影 響。

5.3 研究限制與省思

因受限於時間和篇幅的緣故,本論文所研究的範圍只局限在介詞"給"的 語義功能以及語法結構中介賓結構和動賓結構的位置是否能互相轉換之現象進 行探討。於其他"給"的用法,如動詞"給","把"字句出現的助詞 "給"、表被動式的助詞"給"以及表處置式的介詞"給"等皆非在本論文的 研究範圍之內,因此本論文的研究結果並不能呈現出全面性"給"的用法。

再者,筆者在測試問卷的設計上,對介詞"給"的語法判斷部分,只針對 使用頻率較高的 S1 和 S2 句式進行調查,並沒有涵蓋使用頻率甚少的 S3 句 式。若是能將"給 1"和"給 2"的 S3 句式也併入測試問卷中進行偏誤調查, 則本文的問卷調查結果,將更有助於瞭解華語學習者對介詞"給"的語法結構 之掌握情形。本論文的另一點限制就是在進行語料分析時,筆者主要憑藉的是 個人的語感,輔以例句的語義和結構的異同。此做法很可能造成歸類的結果過 於主觀,未必具有令人滿意的說服力。

雖本論文的研究結果尚有不少未臻理想之處,筆者希望個人日後仍有機會 繼續研究本論文的未盡之處,也期盼本論文的探討內容能提供大家對"給"有 不同的思考方向,作為日後相關議題研究的參考,進而達到拋磚引玉的效果, 引發對"給"字存有疑問或教學有興趣者,投入更多、更新穎而深入的研究。

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

參考文獻

中文書刊

<u>專著</u>

- 陳俊光. 2007. 對比分析與教學應用, 臺北: 文鶴出版社。
- 崔希亮. 2004. <u>語言理解與認知</u>,北京:北京語言大學出版社。
- 鄧守信. 1983. 漢語及物性關係的語義研究,北京:中華社會科學出版社,

102-111頁。

- 鄧守信. 2002. 對外漢語語法點難易度的評定,<u>對外漢語教學語法探索</u>,台北: 臺灣學生書局。
- 鄧守信. 2005. <u>現代漢語語法論文集</u>, 臺北: 文鶴出版社。
- 高明樂. 2004. <u>題元角色的句法實現</u>,北京,中國社會科學出版社。
- 黃宣範. 1992. (中譯本) 漢語語法, Charles N. Li & Sandra A. Thompson.
 - 1983。(原著)Mandarin Chinese: A Functional Reference Grammar. 臺 北: 文鶴出版社。
- 劉月華等. 2004. <u>實用現代漢語語法</u>, 臺北: 師大書苑出版社。
- 李靜霞. 2003. 表處置的"給"字句,<u>現代漢語虛詞研究與對外漢語教學</u>,復 旦大學出版社。
- 陸儉明、瀋陽. 2004. <u>漢語和漢語研究十五講</u>,北京:北京語言大學出版社。 李曉琪. 1994. 介詞"給"、"為"、"替"兼論對外漢語虛詞教學,<u>漢語研</u>
 - 究與語法應用, 265-275頁, 北京:北京語言學院出版社。
- 屈承熹. 1999. <u>漢語認知功能語法</u>, 臺北: 文鶴出版社。
- 湯廷池. 1982. 國語的雙賓結構, 國語語法研究論集, 臺北:臺灣學生書局。
- 湯廷池. 1982. 直接賓語和間接賓語,<u>國語語法研究論集</u>,臺北:臺灣學生 書局。
- 謝信一. 1994. 漢語中時間和意象, <u>功能主義與漢語語法</u>, 218-264 頁。
- 趙元任. 1968. <u>中國話的文法</u>,臺北:學生書局。

朱德熙. 1982. 漢語講義,北京: 商務印書館。

論文

戴浩一. 1988. 時間順序和漢語的語序, <u>國外語言學</u>, 1998 年第1期。

黄居仁、張莉萍、安可思、陳超然. 1999. 辭彙語義和句式語義的互動關 係,中國境內語言暨語言學,第5期:413-428

- 陸儉明. 2004. 詞語句法、語義的多功能性: 對"構式語法"理論的解釋,
 - 外國語, 2004 年第 2 期: 15-22 頁。
- 沈家煊. 1995. "有界"與"無界", <u>中國語文</u>, 第5期: 367-379頁。
- 沈家煊. 1999. "在"字句和"給"字句, <u>中國語文</u>, 第2期: 94-102頁。
- 湯廷池. 1986. 國語與法與功用解釋: 兼談國語與英與功用的對比分析,
 - <u>師大學報</u>,第31期:437-469頁。
- 袁毓林. 2003. 一套漢語動詞論元角色的語法指標,<u>世界漢語教學</u>,第 32 期: 24-36 頁。
- 楊成凱. 1986. Fillmore 的格語法理論(上),<u>國外語言學</u>,第1期, 37-41 頁。
- 楊成凱. 1986. Fillmore 的格語法理論(下),<u>國外語言學</u>,第3期,110-120 頁。
- 張伯江. 1999. 現代漢語的雙及物結構式, 中國語文, 第3期: 175-184頁。
- 朱德熙. 1979. 漢語動詞"給"相關的句法問題,方言,第2期: 81-87頁。
- 朱德熙. 1983. 包含動詞 "給" 的複雜句式, <u>中國語文</u>, 第3期: 161-167頁。
- <u> 書具工</u>
- 李曉琪編. 2003. 現代漢語虛詞手冊, 北京: 北京語言大學出版社。
- 呂叔湘. 1999. 現代漢語八百詞, 北京: 商務印書館。
- 彭小川等. 2004. 對外漢語教學語法釋疑 201 例, 北京: 商務印書館。

英文書刊

- Fillmore, C. J. Construction grammar. 1990. <u>Course Reader for Linguistics</u>. Berkerey: University of California.
- Fillmore, Charles. 1968. <u>The case for case</u>. In E. Bach and R. T. Harms (Eds.). Universals in linguistic theory (pp. 1-88). New York: Holt Rinehart and Winston.

- Goldberg, Adele E. 1995. <u>Constructions: A Construction Grammar Approach to</u> <u>ArgumentStructure</u>. The University Chicago Press.
- Hui Wang. 2005. A Construction-Bsed Approach to Chinese Lexical Semantics. <u>Computational Linguistics and Chinese Language Processing</u>. Vol. 10, No. 4, December 2005, pp. 495-508.
- Jen Ting & Miller Chang. 2004. The Category of "Gei" in Mandarin Chinese and Grammaticalization. <u>Taiwan Journal of Linguistics</u> 2.2: 45-74.
- Jyun-gwang Fred Chen. 2005. <u>Contrastive Research & Crosslinguistic Infuence</u>. Taipei: The Crane Publishing Co.
- Kay, Paul. 1995. <u>Construction Grammar.</u> Jef Verschueren et al. Handbook of Pragmatics: Manual. Amsterdam / Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Co.,.
- Odlin, Terence. 1994. Perspectives on Pedagogical Grammar. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Saeed, J. I. 2003. Semantics. Oxford: Blackwell.

<u>在線資料</u>

- 中央研究院資訊科學研究所、語言學研究所籌備處與計算中心. <u>中央研究院平衡</u> <u>語料庫</u>. 網址: http://www.sinica.edu.tw
- 北京大學中文系應用語言學實驗室. <u>CCL 語料庫檢索系統現代漢語料庫</u>. 網

址:http://ccl.pku.edu.cn

現代漢語常用字頻統計. 網址: http://www.humanum.arts.cuhk.edu.hk

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย



附錄一

調査問卷

被訪者:您好!

這是一份關於漢語介詞"給"的使用情況調查,請您協助我們完成以下的問題。您不需要填寫您的姓名,只要填寫您個人學習漢語的信息即可,本問卷調查對您在校的學習成績並不會造成任何影響,請您如實填寫您認為的答案。

您學習漢語的環境和時間

a.在泰國,	時間	_年	_個月,	總共大約	_小時
b.在國外,	時間	年	個月,	總共大約	小時

我們非常感謝您寶貴的時間和意見, 謝謝!

調查一: 泰國華語學習者 (大學生) 對漢語介詞 "給"的語義判斷

答題方式:請您選出下列每道題目中的"給"在該句中所表示的意思。(單 選題)

- ()你的生日快到了,我給你買一隻新手機。1)幫2)向3)給與
 4)害
- 2. ()新年好! 我們給您老拜年來了。1) 幫 2) 向 3) 給與 4) 害
- 3. ()她給大家帶了一個好消息,她下個月要結婚。1)幫2)向3) 給與4)害
- 4. () 王醫生正在給病人看病。1) 幫 2) 向 3) 給與 4) 害
- 5. ()你的生日快到了,我買一隻新手機給你。1)幫2)向3)給與
 4)害
- () 没問題,我給你打聽打聽這件事。1) 幫 2) 向 3) 給與 4) 害
- 7. () 你心情不好,我給你講個笑話。1) 幫 2) 向 3) 給與 4) 害
- 8. ()昨晚我寄了一封信給媽媽,告訴她我一切都好。1)幫2)向3)給與4)害
- 9. ()天氣變冷了,我給爸爸打一條圍巾。1)幫2)向3)給與4)害
- 10. ()是我不小心,給你弄丟了機票。1)幫2)向3)給與4)害
- 11. ()工人給我們修好了電視,現在可以看了。1)幫2)向3)給與4)害
- 12. () 這個錯誤的投資,給你賠了不少錢。 1) 幫 2) 向 3) 給與 4)

害

- 13. ()昨晚我給媽媽寄了一封信,告訴她我一切都好。 1)幫 2)向 3)給與 4)害
- 14. ()天氣變冷了,我打一條圍巾給爸爸。1)幫 2)向 3)給與 4)害
- 15. ()對不起! 我給你丟臉了。 1)幫 2) 向 3) 給與 4) 害

調查二: 泰國華語學習者(大學生)對漢語介詞 "給"的語法判斷

答題方式:請您判斷下列每個句子的語法是否正確,您認為句子是正確的請打 O;句子不正確的請打×。

- 1. ()我剛坐下,他端了一杯水給我。
- 2. ()睡覺前,母親念故事書給孩子。
- 3. ()你的頭髮長了,我理髮給你。
- 4. ()她帶了一個壞消息給大家,她的媽媽生了重病。
- 5. ()學校寄了停課通知單給學生家長。
- 6. ()姐姐比賽得到第一名,大家道賀給她。
- 7. () 真糟糕, 他弄丟了電影票給你。
- 8. ()我知道你今天要來,這道菜是專門做給你的。
- 9. ()媽媽遞個眼色給爸爸,叫他別再說了。
- 10. ()我感到很難過,砸了信譽給你。
- 11. ()如果有任何問題,請發電子郵件給我。
- 12. () 這孩子每次看見我,老是做個鬼臉給我。
- 13. ()我們先送您去酒店休息,已經訂好了房間給您。
- 14. () 別著急,我馬上想個法子給你。
- 15. ()是我的疏忽大意,損失了十萬美金給你。

附錄二

此附錄為本論文之英文簡略版

SYNTACTIC AND SEMANTIC ANALYSIS OF MANDARIN CHINESE PREPOSITION "GEI" AND ITS TEACHING APPLICATIONS

Abstract

The study has two major purposes: the first is to explore the semantics and syntactic functions of the Chinese Mandarin preposition "Gei" according to the "case grammar" rule and "construction grammar" rule of the cognitive grammar theory as well as to clarify the reasons why construction transfer of "Gei" may be limited. The second is to provide teachers of Mandarin Chinese the error types and deeper reasons for using the preposition "Gei" based on the foundations of the preposition "Gei" and its relevant constructions, which will help Mandarin Chinese learners to understand and correctly use the preposition "Gei".

The study found that the reason why the construction transfer of "Gei" is limited is different from the previously held belief of "whether the transferred object being concrete or abstract". Instead, the two determining factors are: "whether the transferred object had existed before the action or behavior occurs" and "whether the transfer and arrival of the object occurred simultaneously". The survey results showed that the mistaken use of "Gei" by Thai university students is largely due to the complicated semantic characteristics and multi-syntactical functions of the word "Gei" as well as the influence of their mother tongue.

In terms of pedagogical applications, the study presents an appropriate sequence for learning the preposition "Gei" according to its frequency count, the frequency of errors, as well as the semantics and structural difficulties. Furthermore, the study suggests considerations of differences across languages and a more customized way of teaching "Gei" for Thai speakers. More specifically, it is recommended that teachers should first teach grammar points that are more frequently used, have more simple sentence structures and more straightforward semantics, and are familiar to most students. Those used infrequently, having more complicated sentence structures and semantics, should be taught at a later time.

Chapter I Introduction

1.1 Presentation of the Problem

The two Chinese language constructions, "我給你打電話" (Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎdiànhuà, I will give you a call) and "我打電話給你" (Wǒ dǎdiànhuà gěi nǐ, I will call you) are frequently seen in daily life; there seems to be no difference between

them. Native Mandarin Chinese speakers from Mainland China are more familiar with the construction, "我給你打電話" (Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuà, I will give you a call), where as those in Taiwan are more used to the construction, "我打電話給你" (Wǒ dǎ diànhuà gěi nǐ, I will call you). Li and Thompson (1983) believe that the phrase sequences of "我給他送了一本書" (Wǒ gěi tā sòng le yīběnshū, I gave a book to him) and "我送了一本書給他" (Wǒ sòng le yīběnshū gěi tā, I gave him a book) are different but they have the same semantic functions.

However, do the different phrase sequences of these two sentences have the same semantic functions? Aside from the difference in construction due to geographic locations, the researcher has initially observed that the construction forms of "Gei" in modern Mandarin Chinese are varied, due to its different semantics and the many different verbs it complements; this has resulted in the existence of the two above-mentioned sentences. Furthermore, is it possible for preposition/object and verb/object constructions of the preposition "Gei" to be mutually transferable? If it is possible, as in the transfer of (1a) and (1b), will the semantics be the same after the transfer? If it is not possible, as what Zhu Dexi (1983) said that some sentences, like (2a) and (2b), are not transferable, what is the reason behind the limitation?

- (1a) 我給你買衣服。
 Wǒ gěi nǐ mǎi yīfu.
 I bought you clothes.
- (1b) 我買衣服給你。
 Wǒ mǎi yīfu gěi nǐ.
 I bought clothes for you.
- (2a) 我給你講個故事。Wǒ gěi nǐ jiǎng gè gùshì.I am going to tell you a story.
- (2b)*我講個故事給你²⁵。
 Wǒ jiǎng gè gùshì gĕi nǐ.
 I am going to tell a story for you.

In modern Mandarin Chinese, the frequency in which the appearance of the preposition "Gei" reaches as high as 78% and 63% in Mainland China and Taiwan respectively. "Gei" is a verb, a preposition; at times, it is also a partical. Although many linguistic scholars of Mandarin Chinese already studied the word "Gei", few have looked at its thematic roles or cognitive aspects. Furthermore, Zhu Dexi believes that the verb object "故事" (gùshì, story) in (2b) is not concrete; it cannot be given, therefore, (2b) is not a semantically correct sentence. On the other hand, in the

²⁵ The symbol * denotes sentences that are grammatically incorrect.

case of examples (3) and (4), the "眼色" (yǎnsè, look) and "法子" (fǎzi, idea) are not concrete, but they are semantically correct sentences.

- (3) 我遞個眼色給他。Wǒ dì gè yǎnsè gěi tā. I gave him a look.
- (4) 我想個法子給你。Wǒ xiǎng gè fǎzi gěi nǐ.Let me come up with an idea for you.

In terms of the preposition "Gei", the multiple meanings it has created in Chinese sentences has not only become a difficult point for Mandarin Chinese learners, even Mandarin Chinese teachers with many years of experience may also not be able to present examples clearly and systematically, telling students about the semantic characteristics and limitations of each construction of the preposition "Gei".

1.2 Purpose of Study

- 1) To analyze the syntactic structures and the semantic meanings of Mandarin Chinese preposition "Gei".
- 2) To suggest the teaching application of Mandarin Chinese preposition "Gei".

1.3 Scope of Study

The present study is limited to the discussion of "Gei" as a preposition; more specifically, the focus is to understand whether its positions in the preposition/object and verb/object constructions are mutually transferable, as shown in sentences (1a) and (1b). In other words, the scope of the research includes the semantic functions, grammatical structure, and pedagogical sequence of the preposition "Gei", while the use of "Gei" as in verb, as the particle "Gei" in disposal sentences and as the passive "Gei" beyond the scope of current study.

1.4 Significance of Study

- 1) To understand the difference of semantic meanings and syntactic structure of Mandarin Chinese preposition "Gei".
- 2) To be to a guideline to suggest the teaching of Mandarin Chinese preposition "Gei".

1.5 Description of the Study

This dissertation comprises of five chapters:

Chapter I is the introduction, which includes the motives and purposes of the study, as well as its scope and content framework.

Chapter II is a review of relevant literature, covering studies by linguistic scholars on the traditional semantic categorization of the preposition "Gei". The literature serves as a foundation for interpreting further the semantics and syntactic functions of the preposition "Gei", mainly from the construction structure and case grammar perspectives. It should be that these two theoretical perspectives are from the "speaker's" view only –while human communication is actually about the dissemination/exchange of ideas, and syntax/sentence structure is only the carrier of these ideas. Thus, taking a semantic perspective in the current study can make up for the limitations of only from the sentence structure perspective.

Chapter III proposes a theoretical framework for the current study. According to the linguistic data in both Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced corpus and Beijing's Modern Hanyu corpus, the traditional semantics of the preposition "Gei" can be categorized into four types: from "Gei 1" to "Gei 4". The major theory applied in the current study is exploring the semantics and sentence grammar functions according to the "case grammar rule" and the "construction grammar rule" of the cognitive grammar theory as well as to clarify the reasons limiting the construction transfer of "Gei". The major linguistic data used by the study is Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced linguistic corpus.

Chapter IV reports the survey results and their pedagogical implications. To study the semantic types of "Gei 1" to "Gei 4", two surveys that asked the semantics and grammar of "Gei" were conducted among Thai students. Based on the results, the study identifies the learning difficulties in syntactic and semantics functions of the preposition "Gei". Additionally, the study presents a suitable pedagogical sequence for more effective teaching.

In Chapter V, the last chapter, conclusions were made and limitations of the current study were discussed, and suggestions for further research.

Chapter II Review of Related Literature

This chapter reviews previous studies conducted by linguistic scholars of Mandarin Chinese on the semantic categories, construction grammar, and case grammar of the preposition "Gei".

2.1 Traditional Semantic Categorization Research on "Gei"

2.1.1 Zhu Dexi

In his «Yufa Jiangyi», Zhu Dexi pointed out that the preposition "Gei" has three forms of usage:

- In patient main sentence brings in the agent; usage is similar to "cause", "allow", and "placed before verb to show passive voice".
- 2) Brings in the person or things the action is intended for which may be beneficial or harmful.
- 3) Used in imperative sentences taking a blaming tone.

2.1.2 Lǚ Shunxiang

In his « Modern Chinese 800 words », Lu Shunxiang divided the main uses of the preposition "Gei" into six categories:

- 1) Brings in the receiver of the action handed over or delivered.
- 2) Brings in the benefit of the action.
- 3) Brings in the victim of the action.
- 4) Facing, turning, to be directed at.
- 5) "Gei + wo" (give me + verb) used on command sentences represents forcing
- 6) Placed before verb to show passive voice.

2.1.3 Liu Yuehua

In « Modern Chinese Grammar », Liu Yuehua categorized the usage of "Gei" as a preposition in Mandarin Chinese into the five following main types:

- 1) Introduces the receiver of the things.
- 2) Introduces the person or thing served by the action/behavior.
- 3) Introduces the goal of the action/behavior.
- 4) Introduces the agent of the action/behavior.
- 5) In colloquial language, "Gei + wo" (give me + verb) are used in command sentences.

2.1.4 Summary

Summarizing the above-mentioned literature, this study finds that differences exist in the way various academicians categorize and interpret the semantics of the preposition "Gei". Basically, the categorization and interpretation of Lu and Liu are closer to each other and are more detailed. However, Liu does not present usage similar to the "brings in the victim of the action" presented by Liu and Zhu.

2.2 Research on construction grammar of the preposition "Gei"

This section explores the viewpoint of the "construction grammar" part of the cognitive grammar theory as well as the viewpoints of three cognitive theorists: Goldberg (1995), Shen Jiaxuan (1999), and Zhang Bojiang (1999) on the relevant construction of the preposition "Gei".

2.2.1 Goldberg

The idea of construction grammar was first presented by Fillmore (1990), pioneer of the case grammar method. Further researches was then conducted by Adele E. Goldberg (1995), Paul Kay (1995), and others; among these, studies conducted by Goldberg have attracted the most attention. The major concept of the construction grammar theory is explained as follows: "construction has independent semantics". Consequently, the significance of a sentence may not be inferred merely from the meaning of the phrases in the sentence, the structural relationship between phrases or other existing constructions. Basically, construction should have independent meaning, which affects the meaning of the sentence. Goldberg (1995) designed the testing framework of "John X Mary something", asking the respondents what verbs can be used in place of the X in the structure. The result was that 60% of

the respondents believed that the X in the sentence construction should be a verb that means "give". However, statistical data from the actual language corpus show that the utilization rate "make" is higher than "give". Consequently, Goldberg inferred that many people will understand X to be "give"; this is not due to the utilization rate. It may be due to the effect of the double object structure; it partially supports the theoretical hypothesis of "construction affects the meaning and usage of verbs".

Because the basic perception of the double object structure is "a meaningful transfer of giving" (Ahrens, 1995), "giving" is the core semantic of this structure; once other verbs appear in the construction, the structure will assign a "giving" meaning to this "non-giving" verb. In the sample sentences below, the "non-giving" verb used does not have the meaning of "give" in the English language, for example, in the case of "knit"; however, when after these verbs enter this construction, they form a construction representative structure which includes a "receiver".

- Knit her a sweater. (給她打一件毛衣, Gěi tā dǎ yījiànmáoyī)
- Pour me a drink. (給我倒一杯飲料, Gěi wǒ dǎo yībēiyǐnliào)

The above sample sentences suggest that: the significance of the "transmit" and "Gei" of the double object structure in the English language is invisible; the result is invisibly included in the receiver or indirect object by carrying out the action. However, in Mandarin Chinese translations, the concept of "Gei" is obviously shown; the language does not have the "knit her a sweater" version. This is because in the Chinese language system, aside from double object structure, other modes of expressing the giving behavior require the presence of the preposition "Gei". Consequently, based on the construction grammar theory, we also agree to define the basic semantics of the overall construction of the preposition "Gei" as "intentional transfer of giving".

2.2.2 Shen Jiaxuan

Shen Jiaxuan (1999) pointed out that different syntax sequences represent different constructions; each construction is a "gestalt" and it is a complete structure. Only by understanding the overall semantics of the construction could one be able to do the corresponding generalizations for many grammar situations. Shen used the semantic aspects to discuss the relevant constructions of the preposition "Gei", as shown in Table 2-1:

The relevant Constructions of "Gei"	Construction Implication
S1: S (agent)- Gei - X (goal)- $V - O$ (object)	The agent carrying out actions for the
	receiver of the object.
S2: S (agent)- $V - O$ (object)- $Gei - X$ (destination)	The transfer of object given as well as
	reaching the destination; the two
	separate processes of transfer and
	arrival.
S3: S (agent)- V - Gei - X (destination) - O (object)	The transfer of the thing and its
	reaching the destination, transfer and
	arrival join together into one process.

Table 2-1: Categorization Table of Shen for Construction of "Gei"

Shen used the "sequence principle" of the cognitive grammar method to explain the overall semantics of construction S1, S2, and S3. He believed that putting "Gei" before the verb means that the pre-designated goal; putting it after the verb means reaching the destination. The goal is always set before any action is taken; the obligation is always put before the verb. On the other hand, the destination is always reached after the action is taken; the obligation is put after the verb. This viewpoint is consistent with the principle of time sequence (PTS) by Tai James H.-Y. (1988); therefore, the corresponding linguistic sequence of Mandarin Chinese reflects the time sequence of the events occurring in the rational world.

Shen used the "adjacency principle"²⁶ to explain the differences between the construction of S2 and S3. Shen pointed out that sentence (5) showed the transfer of object given as well as reaching the destination; the two separate processes of transfer and arrival are due to " \exists " (mǎi, buy) and "hhightarrow" (gěi nǐ, for you)not being in close proximity; there is a patient "Bfer" (fángzi, a house) in the middle. Consequently, there may not be a "adjacent" relationship between "Bfer" (fángzi, a house) and "hhightarrow" (nǐ, you). Sample sentence (6) also shows the transfer of the thing and its reaching the destination. However, transfer and arrival join together into one process because the proximity of " \exists " (mǎi, buy) and "hhightarrow" (gěi nǐ, giving you) a compound verb " \exists har (mǎi gěi, bought to give) is formed. This is why the proximity of "Bfer" (fángzi, a house) and "hightarrow" (nǎi gěi, bought to give) is formed. This is why the proximity of "Bfer" (fángzi, a house) and "hightarrow" (nǎi gei, bought to give) principle" presented by Shen explains the different linguistic sequence in the "Gei" construction; this may reflect whether a "adjacent" relationship has arisen between the giver of the thing and the receiver.

²⁶ Shen (1999: 97) defined the adjacency principle as: the two elements close to each other lean towards forming a unit. Concrete distance is like that; so is abstract distance.

- (5) 我買了一所房子給你。Wǒ mǎi le yīsuòfángzi gěi nǐ. I bought a house for you.
- (6) 我買給你一所房子。
 Wǒ mǎi gěi nǐ yīsuòfángzi.
 I bought you a house.

2.2.3 Zhang Bojiang

Zhang Bojiang (1999) pointed out that the advantageous locations of practical linguistic statistics to the priority learning of childhood language indicate that the meaning of "Gei" is the basic semantics of double object construction. He believed that constructions related to "Gei" can be categorized into three types, as shown in Table 2-2:

The relevant Constructions of "Gei"	Construction Implication
S1: A (agent)- Gei - R (receiver)- V - P (benefit)	Transfer process completes; benefit is the
S2: A (agent)- V – P (benefit) - Gei -R (receiver)	Transfer process has not been completed; receiver is not the sole benefit.
S3: S (agent)- V - Gei - R (receiver) -P (benefit)	Transfer process completes; sole benefit is the receiver.

Table 2-2: Categorization Table of Zhang for Construction of "Gei"

Zhang pointed out that the construction implication of the double object is in the transfer process of the relationship between getting and belonging. Before the giving, the agent gets the patient; after the giving, the accepter gets the patient. Therefore, before the transfer, the thing given belongs to the agent; after the transfer, the thing given belongs to the accepter. According to Zhang's viewpoint, sample sentence (7) "老李給我送了一本書" (Lǎo lǐ gěi wǒ sòng le yīběnshū, Mr. Li sent me a book) is an ungrammatical sentence because one cannot use the word "給" (gěi, give) to transfer the accepter to a position in front of the verb. In the sample sentence, the position of the receiver "我" (wǒ, me) moved from the original position close to "一本書" (yīběnshū, one book) to being in front of the verb "給" (gěi, give); this violates the "proximity principle", becoming an ungrammatical sentence.

(7)*老李給我送了一本書。Lǎo lǐ gěi wǒ sòng le yīběnshū.

Mr. Li gave me a book.

2.2.4 Summary

The above-mentioned may be summarized as: the construction grammar rule believes that the overall implication of the construction formed by the preposition "Gei" is "the transfer of ownership". The reason for the "adjacency principle" and the "principle of time sequence" (PTS) being able to explain the why the positions of the preposition/object and verb/object constructions formed by the preposition "Gei" are not transferable is because of the "transfer of ownership may not be separated" rule presented by Shen and Zhang. This outlook is something traditional grammar cannot explain; it is a contribution of cognitive grammar to the related constructions of "Gei".

2.3 Case Grammar Research on "Gei" 2.3.1 Fillmore

Case grammar is a form of syntax theory and semantic theory, presented by American linguist CJ Fillmore in 1968, which emphasize the exploring of the relationship between sentence structure and semantics. Fillmore explained that his semantic case is a semantic situation that has deep structure; each noun clause assumes a specific "case role" within the deep structure. Only after these "cases" undergo a specific linearization process, do subjects, direct objects, and other functions appear on the surface structure of the sentence pattern. This is why case grammar is the theory of the verb as the center; the sentence is made up of a V and many related "cases". Through the "cases", the functions of the nouns and the prepositions can then be marked.

2.3.2 Teng Shou-hsin

Making use of the works of Fillmore, Halliday, and Chafe as references to research the case relationship in Mandarin Chinese, Teng Shou-hsin placed emphasis on the mutual relationship between case semantics and syntax. He presented the hierarchy of verb-noun relations, dividing the scope of the case into two groups: "Transitivity role" and "Circumstantial case":

- A. Transitivity roles: Agent, Patient, Range, Recipient
- B. Circumstantial case: Instrument, Locative, Source, Goal, Comitative Benefactive

Teng categorized the relationships of the verbs in the two groups as such: in terms of transitivity relations and circumstantial relations, the former considers the verb as its central part and may not be distributed by the preposition, while the latter can be distributed. Consequently, in the surface structure, these deep structure cases are marked by prepositions.

In addition, Teng (2005) also categorized the interpretations on "destination case" and "benefactive case" as follows: If a discussion element, guided by a preposition, reaches the destination after a shift in the action; then, the role of this discussion element is that of "destination case". There is a need for a preposition such as "to reach" or "Gei"to be used as markers on the surface structure. Teng defined the destination case as "a single body reaching a destination after experiencing a change in position". If a discussion element, guided by a preposition, is the benefactee of the action; then the role of this discussion element is that of "benefactive case". He

pointed out that the benefactive case has three semantic characteristics, namely the semantic of "Gei", "Gei" (where A takes the place of B in doing the thing B should be doing", and the semantic of "gaining benefits through the subject carrying out the action/behavior in the sentence".

2.3.3 Tang T.C. Charles

With regard to whether prepositions can be placed before indirect objects, as well as whether the positions of direct and indirect objects are interchangeable, Tang T.C. Charles (1982) discussed the construction formed by the "Gei" word. Tang believed that the "Gei" of Mandarin Chinese is a homophone which can be further categorized as "Gei (to)" as "goal-marker" and "Gei (for the benefit of)" as "benefactive- marker".

- (8a) 我買一件大衣給他。
 Wǒ mǎi yíjiàndàyī gěi tā.
 I bought him an overcoat.
- (8b) 我買給他一件大衣。
 Wǒ mǎi gěi tā yíjiàndàyī.
 I bought him an overcoat.
- (9a) 我給他買一件大衣。
 Wǒ gěi tā mǎi yíjiàndàyī.
 I helped him to buy an overcoat.
- (9b) 我替他買一件大衣。 Wǒ tì tā mǎi yíjiàndàyī. I helped him to buy an overcoat.

Tang explained the 給" (gěi) in sample sentences (8a) and (8b) are "goal markers"; these sentences are the same. The "給" (gěi) in sample sentence (9a) is "benefactive markers"; the meaning is same as (9b).

According to the Tang's semantic categorization of the preposition "Gei", Chen Jyun-gwang (2007) presented the idea that "Gei" is another form of interpreting possibility; therefore, it can be considered as a form of "benefactive marker", equal to "help". This shows a willingness to help run errands; it is not the destination marker of "bestowing". Consequently, the above-mentioned sentence (8) can be grammatically correct sentence because it has not violated the proximity principle. Zhang saw it as an ungrammatical sentence maybe because he did not consider from this viewpoint.

2.3.4 Summary

In a brief summary, the above literature from the grammar perspective, it is known that there are two semantic cases: one is the "benefactive case"; the second is the "destination case"; this is what division cognitive grammar is not able to do. Consequently, this researcher believes that only by paying attention to both the case grammar and construction grammar perspectives, observe the corresponding
relationship between each semantic and syntactic functions, will one be able to conduct a more complete explanation of the preposition "Gei".

Chapter III Analysis of the Semantic Function and Syntax Structure of the Preposition "Gei"

This chapter proposes the study's research framework and is written in six sections: the first section explains the semantic categorization, construction functions, semantic characteristics and limitations of the complementing verbs (verb groups) as the study's theoretical basis. From the second section to the fifth section, following the categorization sequence of "Gei 1", "Gei 2", "Gei 3"and "Gei 4", the discussion focuses on the different semantics and syntactic functions of the preposition "Gei" from the perspectives of cognitive case grammar and construction grammar. The transfer status of three constructions (S1, S2, and S3) of the preposition from "Gei 1" to "Gei 4" is also addressed. The last section primarily explores the underlying reasons of the limited transfer of the preposition's construction. Two hypothetical factors are discussed: "whether the object is concrete or abstract" and "whether the transfer of the object and its arrival at the destination point are simultaneous or not."

3.1 Semantic Categorization and Syntactical Functions of "Gei 1"to "Gei 4"

The section reviews literature in few sections: 1) in terms of the semantic aspects, according to the corpus²⁷, the study divided the traditional semantic function of the preposition "Gei" into four major categories; 2) in terms of syntax, the study sums up the three basic constructions related to the preposition "Gei", collating and expanding their construction meaning; 3) discussions are made on the semantic characteristics of the verbs complementing the preposition within three constructions relevant to the preposition "Gei."

3.1.1 Semantic Categorization of "Gei 1"to "Gei 4"

The semantics of "Gei" are divided into four major categories after data analysis, as shown in Table 3-1. The difference between the semantic categorization of the study and that of the traditional categorization by previous scholars is believed to be: the major function of the preposition "Gei" is to bring about the incident or target related to the action. Consequently, the semantics of "Gei" should be categorized according to the different object or action/behavior it brings out. This form of categorization can clearly show its different semantic characteristics.

²⁷ The data is from Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced corpus and Beijing's CCL Modern Hanyu.

Category	Semantic Characteristics	Patient	Samples
Gei 1	Brings out the receiver of the	Receiver of	我給你買一雙新鞋。
	concrete object; takes on the	the thing	Wŏ gĕi nĭ mǎi yìshuāngxīnxié.
Sec. 2	meaning of "give".		I bought you a new pair of shoes.
Gei 2	Brings out the receiver of the	Receiver of	她給大家帶來了一個好消息。
	abstract object or the action;	the action	Tā gěi dàjiā dài lái le yígèhǎoxiāoxī.
	takes on the meanings of "to",		She brought good news to everyone.
i an	"directed at" and "with".		
Gei 3	Brings out the benefactee of	Benefactee	我給你打聽這件事。
	the beneficial action/behavior		Wŏ gĕi nǐ dă ting zhèjiànshì.
Mana and	or incident; takes on the		I will help you look into this
	meanings of "for" and "help".		incident.
Gei 4	Brings out the injured party of	Victim	對不起,我給你砸了信譽。
	the damaging action/behavior		Duibuqí, wo gěi ní zá le xinyù.
	or incident; takes on the		Sorry, I ruined for you your
	meaning of "harm" or "loss".		reputation.

Table 3 – 1: The semantic categorization of the preposition "Gei"

3.1.2 Syntactical functions of "Gei 1"to "Gei 4"

The three types of basic construction presented by Shen and Zhang can be summarized as shown in Table 3-2: the S in the construction refers to the subject of the sentence, the V refers to the predicate, and the X refers to the prepositional complement. To make it easier for learners to understand the concept, the study replaced the "proprietary rights" tenet presented by Shen to "ownership"; also, "whether the processes of the shifting the given object and reaching the destination is separate or together" is replaced by "whether the occurrence of the transfer and the time it is completed is simultaneous or not".

Construction	Location	Construction Implication
S1: S - Gei - X - V - O	"Gei" located before the verb	Ownership has not been transferred
S2: S - V – O - Gei – X	"Gei" located after the verb	Ownership has been transferred
S3: S - V - Gei - X - O	"Gei" is located after the verb and very close to it.	Ownership has been transferred

Table 3-2: Relevant construction categories of the preposition "Gei"

After the position of the "Gei" in S3 "S - V - Gei - X – O" shifted to being located after the verb, and became closer to it, it was noticed that the preposition "Gei" will be limited in S3 construction due to the semantic characteristics of the complementing verb.

Lu Jianming (2004) pointed out that "semantic characteristics" are obtained by combining concrete syntax patterns and not solely from the meaning of the word. For example, "寫" (xiĕ, write) leaves concrete construction, but it does not have the semantic characteristics of "giving". Only in looking at the construction of the sentence, "我寫給你一封信" (wǒ xiĕ gĕi nǐ yīfēngxìn, I wrote you a letter) and after understanding that the verb of this construction includes the semantic characteristic of "giving" is the semantic characteristics of "寫" (xiĕ, write) clarified. Furthermore, the different semantics of verbs are determined by the different semantic characteristics, suggesting that this situation is also what makes learning and applying the construction of the preposition "Gei" difficult for foreign learners of Mandarin Chinese. In the following section, the semantic characteristics and limitations of "Gei" in S3 construction are discussed.

3.1.3 Limitations imposed by the semantic characteristics of the verb on "Gei

First, let us clarify whether the "Gei" in a "V – Gei" structure is a compound Verb or a preposition of the auxiliary structure?

According to the viewpoint of Chu Chauncey (1999), there are two points concerning the syntax and semantic characteristics of the auxiliary structure:

First, the auxiliary structure is usually able to insert "得" (dé, could) and "不" (bú, not) into the structure. For example, the auxiliary structure "進去" (jìn qù, go in); one may insert "得" (dé, could) or not, as in "進得去" (jìn dé qù, could go in) and "進不去" (jìn bú qù, could not go in). We have also found that "得" (dé, could) and "不" (bú, not) cannot be inserted into the "V – Gei" structure, see sentences (10a) and (10b).

Second, the semantics of auxiliary structures normally show the action and the results produced by the action/behavior and it faithfully adheres to the time sequence principle. For example, in the case of "打破" (dǎ pò, broken) there has to be the action of "打" (dǎ, striking) before the "破" (pò, broken) result appears. In sentence (10), "買給" (mǎi gěi, buy) does not express the "給" (gěi, giving) being the resulting incident. Based on the above reasons, it can be deduced that "V– Gei" is not an auxiliary.

(10) 我買給你一隻新手機。

Wo mai gei ni yīzhīxīnshoujī

I bought you a new mobile phone.

(10a)*我買得給你一隻新手機。 Wǒ mǎi dé gěi nǐ yīzhīxīnshǒujī

I bought you a new mobile phone.

 (10b) *我買不給你一隻新手機。
 Wǒ mǎi bú gěi nǐ yīzhīxīnshǒujī I didn't buy you a new mobile phone. In summary, we agree that the "Gei" in the "V – Gei" structure is a preposition and not a compound verb of the auxiliary structure. In the next section, the study will further explain the semantic characteristics and limitations of the complementing verb. To do so, categorization of the verb combination and sentence functions of "V – Gei" needs to be first created, by referring to the categorization of the verb that Tang T.C. Charles made on double object-verb phrase and also added "expressive verbs" ²⁸as shown in Table 3 - 3:



²⁸ Zhang Bojing (1999) called those verbs as "transferring information.", such as "report, reply, tell, teach and inform". Such verbs are transferring the action of transmitting or inquiring for information into verbal space, therefore people normally don't use "A-V-P- Gei -R."

Category	Inward verbs	Outward verbs	Bi-directional Verbs	Expressive verbs
Semantic Characteristis	Transferring direct objects inwards; shows the subject to be the destination of the "obtaining" actions.	Transferring direct objects outwards; shows the source of the "giving" and "sending out" actions.	When showing inward action, the subject becomes the destination; when showing outward action, subject becomes the source.	Transferring the action of transmitting or inquiring for information into verbal space.
Verbs	win, receive, eat drink, request, spend	mail, submit, sell, send, give, pay	borrow, lend, buy, take, rent, share	ask, tell, talk, report, inform, reply
Double object-verb phrase	我贏了他錢。 Wǒ yíng le tā qián. I won him the money.	*我寄了他信。 Wǒ jì le tā xìn. I mailed him a letter.	我借他錢。 Wǒ jiè tā qián. I lent him money.	我問你問題。 Wǒ wèn nǐ wèntí. I ask you questions.
Si S- Gei- X- V-O	₹ 我給他贏了錢。 Wǒ gěi tā yíng le qián. I help him to win the money.	✓ 我給他寄了信。 Wǒ gěi tā jì le xìn. I mailed him a letter.	✓ 我給他借了錢。 Wǒ gěi tā jiè le qián. I borrow money for him.	? ? 我給你問問題。 Wǒ gěi nǐ wèn wèntí. I was asked questions by you.
\$2 \$ -V-O- Gei- X	✓ 我赢錢給他。 Wǒ yíng qián gěi tā. I gave him the money that I won.	✓ 我寄了信給他。 Wǒ gěi tā jìle xìn. I mailed a letter to him.	✓ 我借了錢给他。 Wǒ jièle qián gěi tā. I lent him money.	★ *我問問題給你。 Wǒ wèn wèntí gěi nǐ. I ask you questions.
53 S- V-Gei- X- O	× *我嬴給他錢。 Wǒ yíng gěi tā qián. I won him money.	✓ 我寄給他信。 Wǒ jìgěi tā xìn le. I mailed him a letter.	✔ 我借給他錢。 Wǒ jiè gěi tā qián . I lent him money.	★ *我問給你問題。 Wǒ wèn gěi nǐ wèntí. I ask you questions.

Table 3 – 3: Categorization of the verb combination and sentence functions of "V – Gei" (The symbol " \checkmark " denotes a grammatical sentence; the symbol " \checkmark " denotes an ungrammatical sentence; the symbol "?" denotes there is some controversy about the grammatical sentence)

Table 3 - 3 shows that: it can be known that: the "inward verbs" that can enter S1 and S2 construction only has one semantic; they cannot enter S3 construction. "Outward verbs" can enter S1 construction. However, the semantics of the construction may result discrepancies occurring in the sentences due to the direction (outward) of the verb complementing "Gei". This type of verbs may also enter S2 and S3 construction; it has only one semantic. "bi-directional verbs" can enter S1, S2, and S3 constructions; this type of verbs has only one semantic. When "expressive verbs" are able to enter S1 construction, but controversies over the sentence arise, then it cannot enter S2 and S3 constructions. Consequently, the scope of verbs complementing "Gei" in S3 construction will be limited by the semantic

characteristics of the verb, which determines whether the preposition "Gei" is able to enter S3 construction or not.

3.1.4 Summary

Based on the above analysis, the study believes that the complementing verbs in the S3 construction will be limited due to the semantic characteristics of the complementing verb (V–Gei). For example, because "inward verbs" and "expressive verbs" cannot use the "V–Gei" structure, they cannot enter the S3 construction. Correspondingly, because they are able to use the "V – Gei" structure, "outward verbs" and "bi-directional verbs" can enter the S3 construction.

3.2 Semantics and grammar functions of "Gei 1"

3.2.1 Semantic characteristics of "Gei 1"

The main semantic characteristic of "Gei 1" is to bring about the receiver of the concrete object, which takes on the meaning of "give". There are 270 pieces on "Gei 1" were collected from the 1200 pieces of database on "Gei" in the corpus²⁹, two of those collected sentences are as follows:

- (11) 由於上級的授權,我推薦四位專家給文化中心。
 - Yóu yú shàngjí de shòuquán, wǒ tuī jiàn sìwèizhuānjiā gěi wénhu zhōngxīn.

Due to being empowered by my superiors, I recommended four experts to the cultural center.

(12) 自爆炸發生以來,他每天給救災人員送食物。

Zì bàozhà fāshēng yĭlái, tā měitiān gěi jiùzāirényuán song shíwù. He has been helping send food to the rescue workers since the bombing occurred.

The sentence (12) shows that "幫" (bāng, help) can be used to replace the "Gei" in sentence; there is also a possibility of discrepancies. In terms of the discrepancies appearing in the sentences, whether the "Gei" in the sentence brings out the "receiver of the object" or the "benefactee." The current study primarily uses case grammar for categorization. Consequently, this section first attempts to clarify the semantic marker of "Gei" as "goal case" or "benefactive case" or both. Teng (1983) pointed out that the definition of "goal case" is "the destination reached after an object experiences a shift in position". In addition, Zhang Bojiang posited that, "the given object in the double object construction of Mandarin Chinese may be a concrete object in the spatial field; it can also be a concrete object in the non-spatial field or even a concrete object in the verbal field." The definition of the destination case by Teng Shou-hsin may be explicated, as "the designated point of the agent carrying out the action/behavior, which cause a certain object to shift". We believe that the "giving of the object" brought out by the "Gei" of the goal case is not only

²⁹ The corpus is Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced corpus.

spatial concrete object; it may also be a non-spatial action/behavior, or may even be extended to the abstract news of the verbal field.

The goal of "the agent carrying out certain actions/behavior for the receiver of the object" can be used to explain the above sentences. Should we choose to adhere to the definition of the goal case, the "receiver of the action" in the sentence is "the agent that carries out action/behavior and causes a change in position of a certain object to the designated point". According to this point, we deduce that the semantic marker of "Gei 1" is "goal case".

3.2.2 Study of construction transfer of "Gei 1"

This section explores whether the syntactic functions of "Gei 1" and these three constructions are transferable.

S1: S (agent) - Gei - X (designated goal) - V - O (concrete object)

S2: S (agent) - V – O (concrete object) - Gei - X (destination)

S3: S (agent) - V - Gei - X (destination) - O (concrete object)

(13) <u>我</u>給<u>你</u>買<u>一雙新鞋</u>。

Wǒ gěi nǐ mǎi yìshuāngxīnxié.

I bought you a pair of new shoes.

agent designated goal concrete object

(13b) <u>我</u> 買<u>一雙新鞋</u> 給 <u>你</u>。

Wǒ mǎi yìshuāngxīnxié gěi nǐ.

I bought a pair of new shoes for you.

agent concrete object destination

(13c)<u>我</u>買給<u>你一雙新鞋</u>。

Wǒ mǎi gěi nǐ yìshuāngxīnxié.

I bought you a pair of new shoes.

agent destination concrete object

The construction meaning of sentence (13a) is "I am carrying out the action of buying new shoes for you". Because the semantic marker of "Gei 1" is "goal case", "我" (wǒ, I) in sentence (13a) is the "agent", "你" (nǐ, you) is the "designated goal" and also the receiver of the benefit object "新鞋" (xīnxié, new shoes). The construction meanings of sentences (13b) and (13c) show that through the occurrence of "bought a new pair of shoes" the benefit object "新鞋" (xīnxié, new shoes) has made a shift in position; the ownership of "新鞋" (xīnxié, new shoes) has shifted from "我" (wǒ, I) to "你" (nǐ, you). This is why the "你"(nǐ, you) in sentences (13b) and (13c) is still the receiver of the object, which means "你" (nǐ, you) is also the "destination goal". Consequently, these sentences are grammatically correct.

3.2.3. Summary

From the above discussion, it can be known that the semantics characteristic of "Gei 1" in the construction is "to introduce the receiver of the concrete object" and the semantic marker is "goal case". The three constructions (S1, S2, and S3) of "Gei 1" are mutually transferable. However, the syntactic functions of these three constructions are different.

3.3 Semantics and grammar functions of "Gei 2"

3.3.1 Semantic characteristics of "Gei 2"

The main semantic characteristic of "Gei 2" is to bring about the target or abstract object affected by the action; takes on the meanings of "向" (xiàng, to), "對" (duì, directed at) and "跟" (gēn,with). There are 214 pieces on "Gei 2" were collected from the 1200 pieces of the database on "Gei" the corpus ³⁰, two of those collected sentences are as follows:

(14) 設計師給大家傳遞了最新的流行訊息。

Shèjìshī gĕi dàjiā chuán dì le zuì xī de liúxíngxùnxī The designer delivered to everybody the latest fashion information.

(15) 小姐, 您要買什麼? 我給您介紹我們公司的最新產品。

Xiǎojiě, nín yào mǎi shénme? wǒ gěi nín jièshào wǒmengōngsī de zuì xīnchǎnpǐn.

Miss, what would you like to buy? I will introduce our company's latest products to you.

The sentence above can use the viewpoint of "the agent carries out an event or action/behavior with the receiver of the object as the target" for explanation. The researcher believes that "a certain event" is a not a concrete object, it can also be an abstract object, like the information spread by the agent when he carries out a certain action/behavior or the effect produced. If we follow the above-mentioned definition of goal case, the "receiver of the object" is "the designated point at which the agent carries out the action and causes a certain object to shift position"; the study suggests that the semantic marker of "Gei 2" is "goal case".

3.3.2 Study of construction transfer of "Gei 2"

This section explores whether the syntactic functions of "Gei 2" and these three constructions are transferable.

S1: S (agent) - Gei - X (designated goal) - V - O (concrete object)

- S2: S (agent) V O (abstract object) Gei X (destination)
- S3: S (agent) V Gei X (destination) O (abstract object)

³⁰ The corpus is Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced corpus.

(16a) 她給 大家 帶來了一個好消息。
 Tā gĕi dàjiā dài lái le yígèhǎoxiāoxi.
 She brought everybody good news.
 agent designated goal abstract object

(16b) 她帶來了 一個好消息 給 大家。
 Tā dài lái le yígèhǎoxiāoxi gěi dàjiā.
 She brought good news for everybody.
 agent abstract object destination

(16c) 她 帶來給 <u>大家</u> 一個好消息。
 Tā dài lái gěi dàjiā yígèhǎoxiāoxi.
 <u>She</u> brought <u>everybody</u> <u>good news</u>.
 agent <u>destination</u> abstract object

The construction meaning of sentence (16a) "she carried out the action of bringing good news to everybody". Because the semantic marker of "Gei 2" is "goal case", "她" (tā, she) in the sentence (16a) is the "agent", the designated goal is "大 家" (dàjiā, everybody) which is also the destination and the receiver of the abstract object "好消息 (hǎoxiāoxi, good news). The construction meanings of sentences (16b) and (16c) show that through the occurrence of the action "帶來好消息" (dài lái hǎoxiāoxi, brought good news), the position of "好消息 (hǎoxiāoxi, good news) has already shifted. Through "帶來" (dài lái, bringing), the ownership of "好消息" (hǎoxiāoxi, good news) has already passed from "她" (tā, she) to a very clear direction towards "大家" (dàjiā, everybody). This is why the "大家" (dàjiā, everybody) in sentences (16b) and (16c) is still the receiver of the object; hence, the destination. Consequently, sentences (16b) and (16c) are grammatically correct sentences.

On the other hand, are the meanings of these two sentences (16b) and (16c) the same? According to the Table 3–2, the disparity between the two S2 and S3 constructions comes from "whether the occurrence of the transfer is simultaneous with the time the action was completed". In other words, according to the "adjacency principle" presented by Shen Jiaxuan, in the sentence (16b), "好消息" (hǎoxiāoxi, good news) and "大家" (dàjiā, everybody) are not close because there is "Gei" in the middle. This is why when the time the agent carries out the action of "帶來" (dài lái, bringing) is not simultaneous with the receiver receiving the "good news", the sentence meaning can also be explained as she is already carrying out the action of "bringing the good news". However, "大家" (dàjiā , everybody) may not appear during the carrying of the action. This means that "好消息" (hǎoxiāoxi, good news) may not be received at the same time; the ownership of "好消息" (hǎoxiāoxi, good

news) has already been carried, but has not yet been transmitted to " $imes \bar{x}$ " (dàjiā, everybody). This is shown in sentence (16d).

(16d) 她帶來了一個好消息給大家,可惜十分鐘前大家已經離開,所以沒有人知道是什麼好消息。
Tā dài lái le yígèhǎoxiāoxi gěi dàjiā, kě xī shífēnzhōng qián dàji yǐjīng li kai, suǒyǐ méi yǒu rén zhīdào shì shénme hǎoxiāxi.
She brought a piece of good news for everybody, however; everyone left ten minutes ago; now nobody knows about this good news.

Comparatively speaking, the timeframes of "大家" (dàjiā, everybody) and "好消息" (hǎo xiāoxi, good news) are simultaneous in the sentence (16c) "She brought a piece of good news for everybody". This means that the ownership of the "好消息" (hǎo xiāoxi, good news) has already transferred and has reached "大家" (dàjiā, everybody) the same time as the action is being done. The researcher has also noticed that all S1 construction of the preposition "Gei", after transferring to S3, the aspect mark "了" (le) originally existing in the sentences have all been eliminated. The researcher believes this is because the construction meaning of S3 is "transfer of ownership and the occurrence of the transfer are simultaneous with the time the action was completed", which also has the semantics of "being completed".

(17a) <u>我</u> 給<u>你</u> 講個 <u>笑話</u>。
Wǒ gèi nǐ jiǎng gè xiàohuà.
<u>I</u> tell <u>you a joke</u>.
agent designated goal abstract object

(17b) *<u>我</u> 講個 <u>笑話給你</u>。
 Wǒ jiǎng gè xiàohuà gěi nǐ.
 <u>I tell a joke</u> to <u>you</u>.
 agent abstract object destination

(17c)?<u>我</u>講給<u>你</u>一個笑話。

Wǒ jiǎng gěi nǐ yigèxiàohuà. <u>I tell you a joke</u>. agent destination abstract object

The construction meaning of sentence (17a) is "I am carrying out the action of telling a joke to you". Because the semantic marker of "Gei 2" is as "goal case", consequently, "我" (wǒ, I) in the sentence (17a) is the agent, the designated goal is "你" (nǐ, you) which is also the destination; this is equal to the abstract object "笑話" (xiàohuà, joke) being the receiver. In sentence (17b), the meaning shows that through the action of "講" (jiǎng, telling), "笑話" (xiàohuà, joke) has already shifted position. However, this action which has been carried out by the agent has not produced a

clear direction and has moved to the designated receiver. In other words, there is no way to clearly say if the destination of behavior has actually reached "你" (nǐ, you) and not other goals. This is why this sentence is not correct. The researcher believes that another reason for the sentence becoming grammatically incorrect is that there were no sample similar to (17b) in the corpus base. As shown in Table 3 – 3, in sentence (17c), the verb "講" (jiǎng, telling) belongs to the category of "expressive verbs". Normally, it cannot be used together with "Gei" to form "V – "Gei", this is why when "telling + Gei" appears in "S3: S – V- "Gei – X – O", there is some controversy about the sentence.

3.3.3 Summary

From the above discussion, it can be known that the constructions S1, S2, and S3 of "Gei 2" cannot mutually transfer; only when "Gei 2" can clearly show that the direction of the transfer is to reach the destination, the three construction of "Gei 2" become mutually transferable. However, the syntactic functions of the three constructions are different.

Additionally, it has been noticed that sentence (17b), "我講個笑話給你" (wǒ jiǎng gè xiàohuà gěi nǐ, I tell a joke to you), if the verb "聽"(tīng, listen) was to be added after "you", it will become "我講個笑話給你聽"(wǒ jiǎng gè xiàohuà gěi nǐ tīng, I tell a joke to you), which is a grammatically correct sentence. The researcher believes that the result "笑話" (xiàohuà, joke) produced as a result of the action "講" (telling", jiǎng) is not a concrete object, making it impossible to show the direction of the transfer. This is why the action of adding "聽" (tīng, listen) after "你" (nǐ, you) can further ascertain that "你" (nǐ, you) are the designated receiver of the action of; this also clearly shows that "你" (nǐ, you) is the destination reached when the agent carry out the action to cause "笑話" (xiàohuà, joke) to be transferred.

3.4 Semantics and grammar functions of "Gei 3"

3.4.1 Semantic characteristics of "Gei 3"

The main semantic characteristic of "Gei 3" is to bring about the benefactee of the beneficial action/behavior or incident; takes on the meanings of "Gei" or "help". There are 55 pieces on "Gei 3"were collected from the 1200 pieces of database on "Gei" in the corpus³¹, two of those collected sentences are as follows:

(18) 他想,鞋都撿了,好人做到底,就給她穿上吧。

Tā xiǎng xié dōu jiǎn le, hǎorén zuò dào dǐ, jiù gěi tā chuān shàng ba. He thinks that the shoes have been picked up, might as well do this all the way and put the shoes on for her.

(19) 最近她的心臟病又犯了,醫生正在給她醫治。

Zuìjìn tā de xīnzàngbìng yòu fàn le, yīshēng zhèng zài gĕi tā yīzhì. Recently, her heart condition acted up again, the doctors are helping

³¹ The corpus is Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced corpus.

cure her.

The "Gei" in the above sentences can be replaced by the use of "為" (wéi, for) or "幫" (bāng, help) which has beneficial semantics. The "benefactee" in the sentence (prepositional object) is the benefactee of the "provision of some form of service or an act of charity" by the agent. This is why the thematic role of the indirect object introduced by "Gei 3" is as benefactive case. We use sentence (19) to explain: the subject "他" (tā, he) is the person providing the service of "穿上鞋" (chuān shàng xié, putting on the shoes), replacing "她" (tā, she) in something that she should be doing on her own, meanwhile, "她" (tā, she) becomes a benefactee in the process of the subject carrying out the action.

3.4.2 Study of construction transfer of "Gei 3"

This section explores whether the syntactic functions of "Gei 3" and these three constructions are transferable.

S1: S (agent) - Gei - X (benefactee) - V - O (the service behavior/beneficial incident)
S2: S (agent) - V - O (the service action/beneficial incident) - Gei - X (benefactee)
S3: S (agent) - V - Gei - X (benefactee) - O (the service behavior/beneficial incident)

(20a) <u>我 給 你 打聽打聽 這件事</u>。
 Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ ting dǎ ting zhèjiànshì.
 <u>I</u> will help you look out for <u>this incident</u>.
 agent benefactee service behavior

(20b) *<u>我</u> 打聽打聽 <u>這件事</u> 給 <u>你</u>。
 Wǒ dǎ ting dǎ ting zhèjiànshì gěi nǐ.
 <u>I</u> will help <u>you</u> look out for <u>this incident</u>.
 agent service behavior benefactee

(20c) *<u>我</u> 打聽打聽 給 <u>你</u> 這件事。 wǒ dǎ ting dǎ ting gěi nǐ zhèjiànshì

I will help you look out for this incident.

agent benefactee service behavior

The construction meaning of sentence (20a) is "I will take your place in looking out for this thing". Because the semantic marker of "Gei 3" is "benefactive case", in sentence (20a), "我" (wǒ, I) is the agent and you are the benefactee; it is equivalent to the agent providing the service of "looking out" to the benefactee. However, in sentence (20b), "*I will look out for this incident for you", the benefactive case "你" (nǐ, you) introduced by "Gei 3" has become the destination of receiving "這件事" (zhèjiànsh, this incident); hence, it is grammatically incorrect. The construction meaning of S3 is used, which is "transfer of ownership and the occurrence of the transfer and the completed happening at the same time" to explain

why sentence (20c) is considered an ungrammatical sentence. The agent "我" (wǒ, I) in sentence (20c) provides "你" (nǐ, you) with the giving of "this incident"; this shows that the ownership of "這件事" (zhèjiànsh, this incident) has been transferred to "你" (nǐ, you); the transfer and the completion occur at the same time. However, what the agent realistically provides is the service of "打聽這件事" (dǎ ting zhèjiànshì, looking out for this incident) and not the giving of "這件事" (zhèjiànshì, this incident). Consequently, the ownership of "打聽這件事" (dǎ ting zhèjiànshì, looking out for this incident) should belong to the agent "我" (wǒ, I) and not transferred to "你" (nǐ, you).

3.4.3 Summary

From the above discussion, it can be known that the semantics of "Gei 3" in the construction is "to bring about the benefactee of the beneficial action/behavior or incident". The semantic marker is "benefactive case". We find that S1 construction of "Gei 3" cannot transfer to S2 or S3 construction.

3. 5 Semantics and grammar functions of "Gei 4"

3.5.1 Semantic characteristics of "Gei 4"

The main semantic characteristic of "Gei 4" is to bring out the injured party of the damaging action/behavior or incident; takes on the meaning of "harm" or "lose". sentences with "Gei 4", There are only 5 pieces on "Gei 4" were collected from the 1200 pieces in the corpus³², two of collected sentences are as follows:

(21) 真糟糕, 電影票我給你弄丟了。
 Zhēn zāo gāo, diànyǐngpiào wǒ gěi nǐ nòng diū le.
 Oh no, I lost for you your movie ticket.

(22) 全怪我不爭氣,給您丟臉了。

Quán guài wõ bú zhēngqì, gĕi nín diū liǎn le. I didn't work hard enough so it's all my fault to <u>lose</u> your fault.

The "Gei" in the above-mentioned sentences can be replaced by the use of "害" (hai, harm/lose), which has damage semantics. The construction meaning of sentence (21) is "我" (wǒ, I) am the reason for your loss, the function of "Gei" is to carry out the victim "你" (nǐ, you).

3.5.2 Study of construction transfer of "Gei 4"

This section explores whether the syntax functions of "Gei 4" and these three constructions are transferable.

³² The corpus is Taiwan's Academia Sinica's balanced corpus.

S1: S (agent) - Gei - X (victim) - V - O (damaging action/incident)
S2: S (agent) - V - O (damaging action/incident) - Gei - X (victim)
S3: S (agent) - V - Gei - X (victim) - O (damaging action/incident)

(23a) 對不起,<u>我</u>給<u>你</u><u>砸了信譽</u>。 Duibuqǐ, wǒ gěi nǐ zá le xìnyù. Sorry, <u>I ruined your reputation</u>. agent victim damaging incident

(23b) *對不起,<u>我</u><u>砸了信譽</u>給<u>你</u>。
 Duibuqǐ, wǒ zá le xìnyù gěi nǐ.
 Sorry, <u>I ruined your reputation</u>.
 agent damaging incident victim

(23c) *對不起, <u>我 砸 給 你 信譽</u>。
 Duibuqǐ, wǒ zá gěi nǐ xìnyù.
 Sorry, <u>I ruined your reputation</u>.
 agent victim damaging incident

The construction semantics of sentence (23a) is "I ruined your reputation, allowing you to be damaged or injured". "我" (wǒ, I) in the sentence (23a) is the agent, "你" (nǐ, you) the loser; this means that the action "砸了信譽" (zá le xìnyù, ruining of reputation) of the agent caused loss and damage to the loser. However, in sentence (23b), the "砸了信譽" (zá le xìnyù, ruining of reputation) is the losing behavior; this means that there is an object for "你" (nǐ, you) to receive. However, one of the losers introduced by "Gei 4", "你" (nǐ, you) has become the destination accepting "信譽" (xìnyù, reputation) in this sentence. This is why the sentence is grammatically incorrect.

Similarly, we cannot only explain the sentence (23c) is grammatically incorrect or not by using semantic case of "Gei 4" but also can use the viewpoint of the construction meaning of S3 "transfer of ownership, occurrence of transfer and time completed happening at the same time" to explain the reason why sentence (23c) is considered an ungrammatical sentence. In sentence (23c), the occurrence of the transfer happens the same time as the completion, however, "ruining the reputation" is an incident of loss; ownership does not exist without reputation, so it is not possible to transfer "信譽" (xìnyù, reputation) from "我" (wǒ, I) to "你" (nǐ, you).

3.5.3 Summary

The above discussion suggests that the semantics of "Gei 4" in the construction is "to carry out the victim of the damaging action or incident". The semantic marker is "to carry out the victim". We find that S1 construction of "Gei 4" cannot transfer to S2 or S3 construction.

3.6 Situational analysis of construction transfer of "Gei 1"to "Gei 4"

3.6.1 Reasons behind the limited transfer of S1 and S2 construction of "Gei"

From the results of transfer of S1, S2, and S3 constructions in "Gei 1", "Gei 2", "Gei 3"and "Gei 4", it was noted that the transferred object in the construction (object of the preposition) has some effect over whether the construction will be able to transfer or not. In this chapter, further discussions on two factors are addressed: "whether the transferred object is concrete or abstract" and "whether the transfer of the object and its arrival at the destination are simultaneous or not" to understand the reasons behind the limiting transfer of S1 and S2 construction of "Gei".

3.6.2 Transferred object is concrete or abstract

Zhu Dexi (1983) pointed out that "唱歌" (chàng gē, sing songs), "講笑話" (jiǎngxiàohuà, tell a joke) and other similar verbs belong to the "making" type of verbs, such as "炒菜" (chǎocài, stir-fry vegetables) and "沏茶" (qīchá, infuse tea); all of these belong to existential causative verbs which carry object of result and the object does not exist before the occurrence of the action, it appears as the action is completed. The difference between these two types of verbs is, the first type of the object referred to by the verb is not concrete; it cannot be given. If the object is not concrete and appears in this type of construction "S – V – O – Gei– X" (same as the S2 construction of this study), it will not be a grammatically correct sentence.

Zhu Dexi believed that verbs like "唱" (chàng, sing), "講" (jiǎng, tell) can only have "聽" (tīng, listen) and a few other verbs added after the preposition to appear in S2 construction, as shown in the sentences. However, he did not explain further why the abovementioned verbs were added after the preposition; these sentences are grammatically correct. Thus, therefore, there are still unanswered questions about whether all abstract transfer objects will not be able to appear in S2 construction, and this issue is worth discussing further.

3.6.3 Determining whether transferred object is concrete or abstract

The results of the previous discussion indicate that as S1 construction of "Gei 2" (where it carries out the abstract object or action to the goal) enters S2 construction, not all of the sentences became grammatically wrong after transferring to S2 or S3 construction. Aside from this, it is found many sentences from the "Gei 2" in the corpus, which were still grammatically correct after transferring from S1 to S2 construction (one sentence is shown below). This results are not consistent with the previous viewpoint of Zhu Dexi "If direct object is not concrete and appears in a construction like "S – V – O – Gei– X" (the same as the S2 construction of this study), the sentence will be grammatically wrong".

(24) S1: 她已經夠忙了,可別再給她添麻煩。
 Tā yǐjīng gòu máng le, kě bié zài gěi tā tiān máfan.
 She's busy enough; don't give her anymore hassles.

S2: 她已經夠忙了, 可別再添麻煩給她。

Tā yĭjīng gòu máng le, kĕ bié zài tiān máfan gĕi tā. She's busy enough; don't give anymore hassles to her.

S3:她已經夠忙了,可別再添給她麻煩。
 Tā yǐjīng gòu máng le, kě bié zài tiān gěi tā máfan.
 She's busy enough; don't give her anymore hassles.

Aside from the verification of the above mentioned sample sentence, the study found that only 21 pieces of the 214 sentences collected on "Gei 2" data in thr corpus were not able to be transferred. That majority of the sentences can transfer to S2 or S3 construction, one sentence as shown below:

- (25) S1: 小時候常和她一同去牧羊,她給我唱了很多歌。
 Xiǎoshíhòu cháng hé tā yìtóng qù mùyang, tā gĕi wǒ change le hěnduōgē.
 I went herding sheep with her when we were small, she sang me many songs.
 - S2:*小時候常和她一同去牧羊,她唱了很多歌給我。
 Xiǎoshíhòu cháng hé tā yìtóng qù mùyang, tā change hěnduōgē gěi wǒ.
 I went herding sheep with her when we were small, she sang many songs to me.

From the construction transfer in the sentence presented, it can be explained that for the S1 construction of "Gei 1"and "Gei 2", which has goal case semantic marker, when the transferred object is a concrete one, it is able to transfer to S2 and S3 constructions. If the transferred object is abstract, it may not fully transfer to S2 or S3 construction. The current study, therefore, clarifies that "the transferred object being concrete or abstract" is not a major factor limiting the transfer of construction in the preposition "Gei". Detailed explanations will be offered in later chapters in this dissertation.

3.6.4 Is the transfer of the transferred object simultaneous with its reaching the destination or not

This section continues to study the situation where "if the transferred object is abstract" and the transfer of the object and its arrival at the destination are simultaneous", will it provide the key factor in limiting the transfer of S1 and S2 constructions of the preposition "Gei" or not?

In these sentences, S1 construction is not able to transfer to the S2 construction, the abstract objects or actions given by the agent are primarily related to "verbal" and "visual" types. Based on such observation, these two types include a common scenario: the agent and the receiver should exist at the same time for the above mentioned verbal and visual actions to occur. In other words, the existence or

non-existence of the abstract object carried out by this type of preposition before the action occurs, will only surface with the completion of the action by the agent. For example, in "sing a song"; the "song" does not exist before the "sing"; it appears when the action of 'singing" is carried out. At the same time, the designated receiver would naturally "hear the song".

The previous studies have been pointed out that the basic concept of the S2 construction is "the transfer of ownership and that the occurrence and completed time of the transferred object are simultaneous". With this point and the "adjacency principle", we can explain the sentence (24) is not grammatically correct. In the sentence (24), the "歌" (gē, songs) and "我" (wŏ, me) are separated by "Gei". This means that the appearance of "song" and the time "I" received it are not simultaneous. However, the reality is: at the same time she sang, I had heard the song; the transfer of the object and its reaching the destination must be simultaneous. The above analyses and discussions suggest that the "occurrence and completed time of the transferred object are simultaneous" is the basic condition for the two types of action/behavior mentioned above.

According to the results, the study used four variables: "whether the transferred object is concrete or abstract", "whether the transferred object existed before the action/behavior occurred", "whether the transfer of things and their reaching the destination are simultaneous or not", and "type of verb" to compare the factors limiting the transfer of S1, S2, and S3 constructions for the preposition "Gei". The result is as shown in Table 3 - 4:

ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

	Construction	\$1 ³³	S2 ³⁴	S3 ³⁵
Variables		S - Gei- X - V- O	S - V- O - Gei - X	S - V - Gei - X - O
Transferred	Concrete	—	—	—
Object	Abstract	-	+/	+/-
	Existed	_		
	Non -existed		+/	+/-
Transfer Process	Simultaneous	-	+	+
	Non- Simultaneous		_	_
Type of	Inward verbs		_	+
Verbs	Outward verbs	1620	-	—
	Bi-directional verbs	A TOTA	-	—
	Expressive verbs	a factoria A	+	+

Table 3-4: Compare the factors limiting the transfer of S1, S2, and S3 constructions (The symbol "-" denotes no limitation; "+" denotes limitation; "+/-" denotes part of limitation)

3.6.5 Summary

The above explanations and research results suggest that whether the transferred object is concrete or abstract has nothing to do with crucial factors limiting the transfer of S1 and S2 constructions for the preposition "Gei". As shown in Figure 3 - 1, when the transferred object within the sentence becomes abstract, the construction transfer of the preposition "Gei" is limited due to the factors of whether "the transferred object existed before the action/behavior occurred" and whether "the transfer of things and their reaching the destination are simultaneous or not".

³⁴The symbol "S2" denotes the construction S2 in this study.

³⁵The symbol "S3" denotes the construction S3 in this study.



Figure 3 - 1: Factors limiting the transfer of S1 and S2

The study has collated the discussions and analyses from this chapter and combining them with the results of Table 3 - 4 and Figure 3 - 1, the summary on the limitations found in the three construction of the preposition "Gei" are as follows:

- Among the three constructions, S1 has the lowest level of limitation. Because that all "Gei" ("Gei 1"to "Gei 4") may enter the S1 construction and become grammatically correct sentences.
- 2) Among the three constructions, S2 has the middle level of limitation. Because that "Gei 1" may enter the S2 construction; "Gei 3" and "Gei 4" cannot enter the S3 construction. The factors limiting some "Gei 2" from entering S2 construction are whether "the transferred object existed before the action/behavior occurred" and whether "the transferred object of things and their reaching the destination are simultaneous or not".
- 3) Among the three constructions, S3 has the highest level of limitation. Because that only parts of "Gei 1" and "Gei 2" may enter the S3 construction; "Gei 3" and "Gei 4" cannot enter the S3 construction. In

addition, some "Gei 1" may not even be able to enter S3 construction due to the limitation imposed by the semantic characteristics of "inward verbs". Consequently, aside from the issue of whether the transfer of objects and their reaching the destination are simultaneous or not, the limiting factors of S3 construction also include the limitation imposed by "V – Gei" and other verb combinations.

Chapter IV

The survey results and pedagogical implications of the Preposition "Gei"

Two questionnaires regarding the semantics and grammar of the preposition "Gei" were conducted among Thai university students studying Mandarin Chinese as a Major. The study identifies the difficulties faced by Thai learners when using the preposition "Gei", in both semantic and syntactical areas and suggests a suitable pedagogical sequence for more effective teaching.

4.1 Survey of the preposition "Gei" with Thai university students4.1.1 Purpose of the survey

The purpose of the survey is to look at the semantic and syntactical problems faced by Thai university students regarding the usage of the preposition "Gei".

4.1.2 Samples of the survey

Representative samples of three Thai university students, majoring in Chinese language, were selected randomly. This survey sample did not consider the gender or age of the samples. The respondents were divided into two groups:

- (1) 50 students who have been studying Chinese for less than 480 hours.
- (2) 70 students who have been studying Chinese for 480 to 960 hours.

This study uses the total number of teaching hours mentioned above to compare the disparities in understanding the semantic functions and syntactical structure of the preposition "Gei" by learners of Mandarin Chinese before and after studying. There are 120 valid questionnaires were retrieved.

4.1.3 Methodology of the survey

The questionnaire was divided into two parts:

- (1) A test of the learners' semantic understanding of the preposition "Gei";
- there are 15 multiple choice items in this part.
- (2) A test of learners' understanding of the syntax of the preposition "Gei"; there are 15 true or false items in this part.

4. 1. 4 Results of the survey

The survey results will be explained in the latter part of this study according to each semantic function and syntactical structure of the preposition "Gei".

i. Semantic functions of the preposition "Gei"

The results regarding the semantic functions of the preposition "Gei" can be summarized as shown in Table 4-1:

Semantic functions			Ti	otal: 1	800 Sent	ences				
	"Gei 1" 3 sente	(S1) inces	"Gei 1" (3 sente	S2) ³⁶ nces	"Gei 2"(3 senten	"Gei 2"(S1) 3 sentences		(S1) ices	"Gei 4"(S1) 3 sentences	
	Group 150 sent	A : ences	Group 150 sent	A : ences	Group 150 sent	A : ences	Group 150 sent	A : ences	Group 150 sent	A : ences
	Group 210 sen	B : tences	Group 210 sen	B : tences	Group 210 sen	B : tences	Group 210 sent	B : ences	Group 210 sent	B: ences
Error rate	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%
Group A: 50 people	97	64.6	54	36	59	39.3	48	32	29	19.3
Group B: 70 people	122	58	48	22.8	52	24.7	27	12.8	11	4.7
Total: 120 people	219	60.8	102	28.3	111	30.8	75	20.8	40	11.1
Numbers of errors			/// 2		547					
Overall error rate		-	2.4	a()	30.3%					

Table $4 - 1$	The results regarding	the semantic fi	unctions of the	preposition "Gei
	The results regarding	, the semantie i	unctions of the	preposition Oct

The information in the table can be summarized as follows:

(1) The total number of errors for the semantic function of the preposition "Gei" is 547, about 30.3%. The semantic errors in both groups are consistent. Consequently, whether it is group A or B, the frequency of the error rates is very similar. The frequency of the error rates is sequenced as shown in Figure 4-1 from lowest to highest:



Figure 4-1: The frequency of the error rates regarding the semantic functions

(2) The construction with the highest error rate is the S1 construction of "Gei 1"; the average for both groups is 60.8%. This shows that the percentage of usage errors of learners is higher than 50%. The construction with the lowest error rate is "Gei 4"; the average for both groups is 11.1%.

³⁶ The frequency rate of S2 construction appearing in the Taiwan balanced corpus base is very high. Consequently, during the designing of the questionnaire survey, the S1 and S2 constructions were also included in the survey question items in order to make it more convenient to compare the status of use of these two constructions among language learners.

(3) The error rate of each sentence in group B, who have been studying Mandarin for longer, is lower than group A, who have had less exposure to Mandarin. The disparity of the error rates between sentences in groups A and B is about 15%. From this we can deduct that more study of Mandarin increases learners' understanding of the semantic functions of the preposition of "Gei".

(4) The average error rates of both groups when using the S1 construction of "Gei 1" and S1 construction of "Gei 1" are 60.8% and 28.3% respectively. The disparity between the two is relatively large. Ordinarily, prepositional phrases in Mandarin Chinese are located before the sentence's main verb, functioning as adverbial modifiers. Consequently, the S1 construction is considered the typical prepositional structure. According to conventions, it is easier for learners to understand and learn the S1 construction than it is for them to do so for S2; however, this item has shown opposite results. It could be that these errors are caused by interference from the learners' L1.

ii. Grammatical Structure of the Preposition "Gei"

The results regarding the grammatical structure of construction S1 transferring to S2 construction of the preposition "Gei" can be summarized as shown in Table 4-2:



Å

Structure			Total:	1800	Sentences				A Level	
	"Gei S1 → (3 sente	1" S2 ences)	"Gei S1 → (3 senter	2" S2 nces)	"Gei S1 ≠ S (3 senter	2" 52 1ces)	"Gei 3" S1 ≠ S2 (3 sentences)		"Gei 4" S1 ≠ S2 (3 sentences)	
	Group 150 sent	A ; ences	Group 150 sent	A : ences	Group 150 sente	A : ences	Group 150 sent	A : ences	Group 150 sente	A : ences
	Group 210 sen	B: tences	Group 210 sent	B: ences	Group 210 sent	B : ences	Group 210 sen	B : tences	Group 210 sente	B : ences
Error rate	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%	Numbers of error	%
Group A: 50 people	57	38	65	43.3	65	43.3	68	45.3	34	22.9
Group B: 70 people	51	24.3	86	40.9	69	32.8	96	45.7	30	14.2
Total: 120 people	108	30	151	41.9	134	37.2	164	45.5	64	17.7
Numbers of errors		621								
Overall error rate			1 3.4		34.5%					

Table 4-2: The results regarding the grammatical structure of the preposition "Gei" (The symbol "→" denotes the construction can be translated into the learners' L1 whilst "≠" denotes the construction can't be translated)

The information in the table can be summarized as follows:

(1) The errors of whether the grammar construction S1 can be transferred to S2 construction of "Gei" in both groups are consistent. Consequently, whether it is group A or B, the frequency of the error rates of "Gei" is very similar. The frequency of the error rates is sequenced as shown in Figure 4-2 from lowest to highest:



Figure 4-2: The frequency of the error rates regarding the grammatical structure

(2) From figure 4-2 we can see that the highest error rate for whether the S1 construction can transfer to S2 is "Gei 3"; the average for both groups is 45.5%. In other words, close to one-half of the respondents responded wrongly to this type of question. Consequently, the degree of difficulty is highest for understanding the grammar point of the S1 construction of "Gei 3" (being non-transferable to S2). The construction with the lowest error rate is "Gei 4"; the average for both groups is 17.7%. Consequently, the learners' understanding of the grammar point of the S1 construction of "Gei 4"; the average for both groups is 17.7%. Consequently, the learners' understanding of the grammar point of the S1 construction of "Gei 4" (being non-transferable to S2) is generally correct.

(3) The error rate of each sentence in group B, who have been studying for longer is lower than group A, who have had less exposure. The disparity of the error

rates between groups A and B is about 7 %. This means that more exposure to Mandarin can increase learners' awareness of the grammar structure of the preposition "Gei".

(4) As for "Gei 2", this has similar semantics, the question of whether or not S1 is able to be transferred to S2 or not showed that the error rates of both groups are 41.9% and 37.2%, respectively. From this it can be seen that the two groups of learners have a better grasp of S1 not being able to transfer to S2 than S1 being able to transfer to S2.

4.1.5 Reasons why Thai university students make errors when using the preposition "Gei"

According to the survey results, the error rate of group B, in terms of semantics and grammar, is lower than group A. This means that learners are better able to grasp the usage of "Gei" after appropriate exposure in a learning environment. The reasons for Thai university students making errors when using the preposition "Gei" are as follows:

(1) The word "Gei" has complex semantic characteristics and multiple grammar functions. It has at least four different semantic functions and at least three relevant constructions. Furthermore, the transfer status within the constructions is affected by verb combination within the construction as well as by the limitations on the transferring process of the prepositional object. So, it is no surprise that such a complicated word is problematic for learners.

(2) Some errors are also caused by first language transfer in the students' learning process. In the majority of Chinese-Thai dictionaries or instructional materials, the semantic interpretation of "Gei" is "1M" (pronounced /hâj/). Basically, the syntax of the Thai preposition "1M" /hâj/ is "S - V - O - 1M/hâj/- X". This is why in using the construction of the preposition "Gei", it is easy for Thai learners to directly transfer the construction of "1M" /hâj/ to Chinese. As a result, the correct usage rate of students will be low when the construction of "S - Gei- X - V - O" is corresponding in Thai and Chinese.

4.2 Pedagogical grammar of the preposition "Gei"

This section discusses some of the factors to be considered in the teaching of the preposition "Gei" and in particular try to assess an appropriate sequence in which to present the language to learners. Factors to be considered include the frequency of appearance, the level of difficulty of the preposition "Gei", as well as the frequency of learners' error. Moreover, the study presents a teaching sequence of the preposition "Gei" for Thai university students according to the pedagogical grammar theory of Teng Shou-hsin.

4.2.1 Structure of the Pedagogical Grammar Theory

Based on the definition of "pedagogical grammar"³⁷, Odlin (1994) believes that instructional semantics should link very different fields, including theoretical semantics, second language practice, and others. What Odlin presented was the initial concept of instructional semantics; based on this foundation, Teng Shou-hsin (1997) further developed the principles of pedagogical grammar of Mandarin Chinese as a second language.

The theory of pedagogical grammar advocates that the pedagogy of grammar is cumulative. The sequence of the syntax points reflects the cumulative nature of pedagogical grammar because "accumulation" organizes syntax into different levels; "sequencing" is an issue that needs to be independently resolved within each level. Teng (1998) mentioned that instructional sequence should not only be based on the teacher's experience, as well as the different variables of language learning, should also be taken into account. The researcher used the related principles of syntax sequence presented by Teng as the basis for the syntax sequence of this study. The four principles are as follows:

(1) Frequency count: If the frequency of A appears higher than B in natural language, the sequence for learners is to first learn A, then B.

(2) Formal vs. semantic complexity: A more complex structure means a higher degree of difficulty; more complex semantics means a higher degree of difficulty; more complex semantics means a more difficult structure.

(3) Inter-linguistic distance: The larger the inter-linguistic distance, the higher the degree of difficulty. The structures that be positively transferred between the first and second languages mean that learners may exert lesser effort in learning the structures. Teachers should teach these first.

(4) Developmental/natural sequence: The development sequence of the learning processes for first and second languages can be used as reference for designing the pedagogical sequence.

4.2.2 The frequency of appearances of "Gei"

To assess the frequency of usage of "Gei" among Mandarin Chinese native speakers, Taiwan balanced corpus was used as the primary source. Examination of the results yielded a total of 3762 pieces of data; because the target sample is too large, this study made use of the first 1200 pieces of data as major sources for corpus analysis. 544 sentences regarding the preposition "Gei 1" to "Gei 4" can be found. The frequency of appearance of prepositions "Gei 1" to "Gei 4" is sequenced from highest to lowest as follows:

- (1) "Gei 1": 270 sentences.
- (2) "Gei 2": 214 sentences.
- (3) "Gei 3": 55 sentences.
- (4) "Gei 4": 5 sentences.

³⁷ Odin defined the pedagogical grammar is "The term pedagogical grammar usually denotes the type of grammatical analysis and instruction designed for the need of second language students."

With the combination of the various semantic and syntax points of "Gei", the frequency of appearance of the S1, S2, and S3 constructions of prepositions "Gei 1"to "Gei 4" are sequenced from highest to lowest as follows:

(1) S2 construction of "Gei 1": 207 sentences (accounts for 17.25 % of 1200).

(2) S1 construction of "Gei 2": 176 sentences (accounts for 14.66 % of 1200).

(3) S1 construction of "Gei 3": 56 sentences (accounts for 4.67 % of 1200).

(4) S1 construction of "Gei 1": 55 sentences (accounts for 4.58 % of 1200).

(5) S2 construction of "Gei 2": 37 sentences (accounts for 3.08 % of 1200).

(6) S3 construction of "Gei 1": 7 sentences (accounts for 0.58% of 1200).

(7) S1 construction of "Gei 4": 5 sentences (accounts for 0.41 % of 1200).

(8) S3 construction of "Gei 2": 1 sentence (accounts for 0.08 % of 1200).

4.2.3 The semantic complexity and grammatical difficulty of "Gei"

As mentioned in the section above, Teng (1998) believes that there are four factors which affect the sequence of syntax. In 2002, he expanded the complexity level to the degree of difficultness, which can be determined through the four principles below:

(1) Structure: the more complex the structure, the higher the degree of difficulty.

(2) Semantics: the more complex the semantics, the higher the degree of difficulty.

(3) Inter-linguistic: the larger the gap between languages, the higher the degree of difficulty.

(4) Categorization (systematization): the harder to categorize, the higher the degree of difficulty.

Based on the results of the survey, the study explores the degree of difficultness of "Gei" for Thai university students, which is combined with the complexity level of its semantics and structure. Through categorizing the complexity levels of the four types of the preposition "Gei" in terms of semantics and structure, then combining this information with the error rates of Thai university students regarding the semantics and structure of the preposition "Gei", it is able to determine the degree of difficulty of "Gei". The rank of the degree of difficulty of "Gei" is according to the principles (1) to (3) previously presented by Teng; in this case the numbers 1 to 5 are used. The larger the number, the higher the degree of difficulty; if the numbers are the same, it means the degree of difficulty is the same.

Degree of Semantic Difficulty of the Preposition "Gei"

Based on the results of the semantic characteristics of the preposition "Gei", the comparisons on the complexity levels of the semantics of "Gei 1"to "Gei 4" are made as follows:

(1) "Gei 1" is the basic meaning of "Gei". In his discussion of grammar sequence, Teng Shou-hsin (1998) addressed that the structure-dependence of the structure is a standard for sequence. One should start from the basic structure to the extended structure, from the core structure to the peripheral structure. This basis for structural sequence may also be used for semantics, going from basic semantics to extended semantics. This study pointed out that "Gei 1" carries out the goal case, it can be replaced by "for" or "help"; the sentence may have ambiguities. Consequently, the complexity level of the semantics of "Gei 1" is not the lowest among the four constructions, but it should be lower than the extended semantics of "Gei".

(2) This study has mentioned that the actions/behavior brought out by "Gei 2" are primarily verbal and visual and not related to concrete things; therefore, learners need to first be able understand the concept of "abstract objects". In addition, the verbs complementing "Gei 2" which mainly belong to the category of "expressive verbs"; when this type of verbs is used in S2 construction, the sentence could have ambiguities. Furthermore, "expressive verbs" may not be used neither in the S2 nor S3 constructions. Judging from conventions, the more stringent the complementing limitations of a grammar point, the higher is its level of complexity. The complexity level of the semantics of "Gei 2" should be the highest among the four constructions.

(3) "Gei 3" is the extended semantic of the basic meaning of "Gei 1", which is "to give"; therefore, it means to give or to provide some form of beneficial action or instance. According to Tang's points, "Gei" in Mandarin Chinese is a dissenting word, which can further be divided into one that is a "goal marker" and another that is a "benefactive marker". The uncertain benefactive semantics of "Gei 3" would cause difficulties for learners trying to understand the semantics of the word. Consequently, the complexity level of the semantics of "Gei 3" should be the second highest among the four constructions.

(4) The "impairing" semantics of "Gei 4" are clear and obvious. This is because the semantic characteristics of "Gei 4" only show a single semantic function, which is "to carry out an injured party". Consequently, this will cause the sentence to produce ambiguities. In comparison, the complexity level of "Gei 4" semantics should be the lowest.

The complexity levels of the semantics of prepositions "Gei 1" to "Gei 4" have been sequenced as number 1, 2, 3, and 4 from the lowest to the highest, shown here in Table 4 - 3:

Category	"Gei 1"	"Gei 1"	"Gei 2"	"Gei 3"	"Gei 4"
	(S1)	(S2)	(S1)	(S1)	(S1)
Semantic complexity	2	2	4	3	1

Table 4 – 3: The Semantic complexity levels of the preposition "Gei"

The study has brought together the complexity levels of the semantics of prepositions "Gei" from Table 4-2 and the error rates of Thai university students in using the semantics of the preposition "Gei", to obtain the degree of semantic difficulty of the preposition "Gei", shown here in Table 4-4:

Category	"Gei 1" (S1)	"Gei 1" (S2)	"Gei 2" (S1)	"Gei 3" (S1)	"Gei 4" (S1)
Semantic complexity	2	2	4	3	1
Rank of error rate 38	5	3	4	2	1
Accumulated score for semantic difficulty 39	7	5	8	5	2
Semantic difficulty degree ⁴⁰	3	2	4	2	1

Table 4 – 4: The degree of semantic difficulty of the preposition "Gei"

From the results of Table 4-4, the degree of semantic difficulty of the preposition "Gei" from the easiest to the most difficult are as follows: "Gei 4" of S1 construction is the easiest, both "Gei 1"and "Gei 3" of S1 construction are easier, "Gei 1"of S1 construction is more difficult, Gei 2" of S1 construction is the most difficult.

Syntactical Difficulties of the Preposition "Gei"

Based on the previous discussion on the limitations encountered by the transfer of three constructions (S1, S2 and S3) of the preposition "Gei" and according to the rule of "the stricter the complementing limitation of a grammar point, the higher the level of difficulty", it can be concluded that S1 construction has the smallest level of limitation, while the S3 construction has the highest level of limitation. The researcher has ranked the complexity level of the three constructions from the lowest to the highest as number 1, 2, 3, and 4, shown here in Table 4-5 :

Category	Gei 1	Gei 1	Gei 1	Gei 2	Gei 2	Gei 3	Gei 4
	S1	S2	S3	Sl	S2	S1	S1
Syntactical complexity	91	2	4	1	3		1

Table 4-5: The syntactical complexity levels of the preposition "Gei"

In addition, from the survey on the error situation of Thai university students in the transfer from S1 to S2 construction of the grammar structure of the preposition "Gei", one can see that they perform the best in applying the concept of the S1 construction of "Gei 4" being non-transferable to S2, with the concept of the S1

³⁸ Use number 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 to indicate the rank of error rate from the lowest to the highest.

³⁹The higher the accumulated score, the higher the degree of semantic difficulty.

⁴⁰ The larger the number, the higher the degree of difficulty.

construction of "Gei 1" being transferable to S2 faring worse. This shows that the abilities to apply S1 and S2 constructions are very similar. The students show the least ability in applying the concept of the S1 construction of "Gei 3" being non-transferable to S2. The study has brought together the syntactical complexity levels of the preposition "Gei" from Table 4-5 and the error rates of Thai university students in using the semantics of the preposition "Gei", to obtain the degree of syntactical difficultness of the preposition "Gei", which is shown in Table 4 – 6:

Category	Gei 1 S1	Gei 1 S2	Gei 2 S1	Gei 2 S2	Gei 3 Sl	Gei 4 S1
Syntactical complexity	1	2	1	3	1	1
Rank of syntactical error rate ⁴¹	2	2	3	4	5	1
Accumulated score for syntactical difficulty 42	3	4	4	7	6	2
Syntactical difficulty degree ⁴³	2	3	3	5	4	1

Table 4-6: The degree of syntactical difficulty of the preposition "Gei"

4.2.4 Pedagogical grammar sequence for the preposition "Gei"

The presentation of grammatical structures should be learner-oriented; they should be designed specifically for the learners. Odlin (1994) presented the following rules regarding the writing of pedagogical grammar materials:

- (1) Concrete: Grammar should be clearly explained.
- (2) Simple: The simpler the grammar content, the better.

(3) Non-technical: Avoid technical linguistic jargon and use simple and frequently-spoken language to explain things.

(4) Cumulative: Make sure grammatical point can achieve 100% of the learning goal at the last stage.

The sequence of the study is primarily focused on intra-sequencing; this refers to the sequence of instruction for these four forms of the preposition "Gei". In the previous sections, the study discusses the frequency of appearances, the level of difficulty of the preposition "Gei", as well as the frequency of learners' error. The study formulates the intra-sequencing based on these three factors. To complement the questions regarding the survey, the study first chose the frequency of appearances which are relevant to the survey and ranked them from highest to lowest as shown in Figure 4-3:

⁴¹ Use number 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 to indicate the rank of error rate from the lowest to the highest.

⁴²The higher the accumulated score, the higher the degree of syntactical difficulty.

⁴³ The larger the number, the higher the degree of difficulty.



Figure 4-3: The frequency of appearances which are relevant to the survey

According to the results of Table 4-5, 4-6 and Figure 4-3, the study formulates an intra-sequencing of the preposition "Gei", which is shown in Table 4-7. Moreover, the study adds the factor of inter-linguistic distance to make the pedagogical sequence for the preposition "Gei" as shown in Figure 4-4.

Category	Gei 1 S1	Gei 1 S2	Gei 2 Sl	Gei 3 Sl	Gei 4 S1
Semantic difficultness degree	3	2	4	2	1
Syntactical difficultness degree	2	3	3	4	1
The frequency of appearances 44	3	1	2	4	5
Accumulated score 45	8	6	9	10	7
Intra-sequencing	3	1	4	5	2

Table 4-7: Intra-sequencing of the preposition "Gei"



Figure 4-4: The pedagogical sequence for the preposition "Gei"

Teng (1998) focused on inter-linguistic distance, which is one of the bases for pedagogical sequence. We agree that there can be a structure of positive transfer between first and second languages; this means that learners can exert lesser efforts in learning the structure; teachers should teach this first. In teaching the preposition "Gei" to Thai learners, it would be beneficial to conduct a positive transfer from the grammar structure of Thai "1³⁷"/hâj/./hâj/. This means that the S2 construction of the preposition "Gei" should be taught ahead of the S1 construction. This viewpoint is appropriate for designing the pedagogical sequence for teaching Mandarin Chinese to Thai university students.

⁴⁴ The frequency of appearances is from the highest to the lowest as number 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5

⁴⁵ The less of the accumulated score, indicated should be taught ahead.

Chapter V Conclusion

The focus of study is to explore the semantics, syntactic functions, and pedagogical sequence of the preposition "Gei". First, based on the linguistic data from Sinica's balanced corpus and Beijing's Modern Hanyu corpus, the traditional semantics of the preposition "Gei" can be categorized into four major types. Through the "case grammar rule" and the "construction grammar rule" of the cognitive grammar theory, the different semantic characteristics of the preposition "Gei" and the underlying reasons of the limitations occurring during construction transfer in grammar structure are explored. Second, through the questionnaire survey, the study seeks to understand the difficulties encountered by language learners whose mother tongue is Thai. Last, it combines the error situation of Thai university students in learning the preposition "Gei" with its level of semantic complexity; the results are used to formulate an appropriate pedagogical sequence. This chapter is concluded with discussion on the limitations of the current study and implications for future research.

5.1 Conclusion

Built upon the previous discussion and findings, the current study presents the following conclusions:

5.1.1 Semantic characteristics of the preposition "Gei"

From the case grammar perspective, there are two thematic roles of the preposition "Gei": in a "goal" case, its semantic characteristic is to bring about the receiver of the concrete object; and in a "benefactive" case, its semantic characteristic is to gain benefits through the subject carry out the action/behavior in the sentence.

Base on the case grammar theory, this study expands the definition of the goal case to "the agent that carries out action/behavior and causes a change in position of a certain object to the designated point". In this study, the traditional semantics of the preposition of "Gei" can be categorized into four types as follows:

- (1) "Gei 1": Carries out the receiver of the concrete object; takes on the meaning of "give".
- (2) "Gei 2": Carries out the target or abstract object affected by the action; takes on the meanings of "to", "directed at" and "with".
- (3) "Gei 3": Brings out the benefactee of the beneficial action/behavior or incident; takes on the meanings of "for" and "help".
- (4) "Gei 4": Carries out the injured party of the damaging action/behavior or incident; takes on the meaning of "harm" or "loss".

5.1.2 Syntactic function of the preposition "Gei"

Based on the concept of the construction grammar theory, this study agrees that the basic definition of the overall construction of the preposition "Gei" is

"intentional transfer of giving." The researcher sums up the "Gei" construction implication as follows:

- (1) S1: S Gei X V O: The ownership of transferred object has not been transferred.
- (2) S2: S V O Gei X: The ownership of transferred object has been transferred, the occurrence and completed time is not simultaneous.
 (2) S2: G W G W O The simultaneous.
- (3) S3: S V- Gei X O: The ownership of transferred object has been transferred, the occurrence and completed time is simultaneous.

5.1.3 Reasons of the limitations of construction transferring of "Gei" This study concludes the reasons of limitations of construction transferring of "Gei" as follows:

- (1) The study identifies that the reason behind the limitation of construction transfer for S1 and S2 is not that "if the transferred object is not concrete, it cannot be given" as proposed by earlier scholars. Therefore, "the transferred object is concrete or abstract" cannot be established as the reason behind the transfer limitations of "Gei".
- (2) The study presents two reasons that may affect the transfer limitation of "Gei": one is "whether the transferred object existed before the action occurred" and "whether the transfer of the thing and the arrival into the destination occurred simultaneously or not." In addition, the preposition "Gei" is limited in "S3" maybe due to the semantic characteristics of the verb it complements. In other words, the limitation existing when S1 and S2 are changing into the construction of S3 will include the semantic characteristics of the verb "Gei" is complementing in S3 construction.

5.2 The Suggestion of the preposition "Gei" Teaching Strategies 5.2.1 The sequence of errors

According to the questionnaire survey results, it is found that the error situation of Thai university students in learning the preposition "Gei" is as follows:

Frequency of errors	Low High
Semantic Functions	Gei 4 ⇔ Gei 3 ⇔ Gei 1 (S2) ⇔ Gei 2 ⇔ Gei 1 (S1)
Transferring S1 to S2 construction	Gei 4 \implies Gei 1 \implies Gei 2 \implies Gei 2 \implies Gei 3 (S1 \neq S2) (S1 \rightarrow S2) (S1 \rightarrow S2) (S1 \neq S2) (S1 \neq S2)

(1) In terms of semantics, the error frequency from low to high is: leraners display more positive control over the semantics of the preposition "Gei

4" in S1 construction; the most difficult is the semantics of the preposition "Gei 1" in S1 construction.

(2) In terms of transferring S1 construction to S2 construction, the error frequency from low to high is: learners display more positive control over the semantics of construction S1 of "Gei 4" not transferable to S2; the degree of difficulty becomes greater with the semantics of S1 of "Gei 3" not to S2 transferable.

5.2.2 The two main reasons for errors are:

- (1) The word "Gei" has complex semantic characteristics and multiple grammar functions. The preposition "Gei" has at least four different semantic functions; it has at least three relevant constructions. Furthermore, the transfer status within the constructions is affected by verb combination within the construction as well as by the limitations on the transferring process of the prepositional object.
- (2) There is the error caused by the first language transfer in the learning process. The researcher has observed that in majority of Chinese-Thai dictionaries or instructional materials, the semantic interpretation of "Gei" is "1^M" (pronounced /hâj/). Basically, the syntax of the Thai preposition "1^M" /hâj/ is "S V O 1^M/hâj/– X" construction. This is why in using the construction of the preposition "Gei", it is easy for Thai learners to directly transfer the construction of "1^M" /hâj/ to Chinese. Especially, the correct usage rate of students will be low when the construction of "S Gei– X V O" is corresponding in Thai and Chinese.

5.2.3 Pedagogical sequence of the preposition "Gei"

After collating the two results according to statistical data on the frequency count of the various semantics and grammar points for the preposition "Gei", as well as the assessed sequence of the semantic and structural difficulties made the study, the researcher presents the internal sequences of the preposition "Gei". Finally, the factors of intra-sequencing are included for consideration to come up with the following pedagogical sequence for the preposition "Gei" for Thai university students:

Gei 1 (S2)
$$\Longrightarrow$$
 Gei 4 (S1) \Longrightarrow Gei 1 (S1) \Longrightarrow Gei 2 (S1) \Longrightarrow Gei 3 (S1)

The first teaching —

→ The latest teaching

It is recommend that when teachers are teaching the preposition "Gei", they should start from the S2 construction that learners of Mandarin Chinese whose mother tongue is Thai are more familiar with, followed by the typical prepositional phrases as in construction S1. In construction S1, teachers should first teach "Gei 4," which only has one semantic, to be followed by "Gei 1," which has the basic meaning, then "Gei 2", which requires determining whether prepositional object is concrete or abstract. "Gei 3", which has various meaning, should be left for last. Therefore, teachers should first teach grammar points which are frequently used, have lower degree of structural and semantic complexity, and are more familiar to learners. They should teach grammar points that are less frequently used, have high degree of structural and semantic complexity, and that learners cannot do direct transfer on.

In addition, the process development sequence of first language and second language can also serve as one of the reference basis for instructional semantic sequence. The majority of the research participants (learners of Mandarin Chinese whose mother tongue is Thai) have already learned English before they started learning Mandarin Chinese. This has established a foundation for experiences in learning a second language. Therefore, learners may apply their prior experiences in learning a second language to help them learn Mandarin Chinese better. Correspondingly, the study believes that for learners of Mandarin Chinese whose mother tongue is Thai, aside from the mother tongue interfering with the Mandarin Chinese learning process, there is also a possible interference of second language "English". Consequently, in teaching Mandarin Chinese, teachers of this language should consider the positive and negative influences of English learning on Mandarin Chinese learners.

5.3 Limitations of the Study

Due to the limitations of time and space, the scope of the study has only been limited to the semantic functions as well as exploring whether the grammatical structure of the object located in the middle and the position of the verb/direct object are mutually interchangeable. As for the other uses of the preposition "Gei", such as "Gei" as in verb, as the particle "Gei" in disposal sentences and as the passive "Gei" beyond the scope of current study, they are not included in the research scope of the study. Consequently, the research conducted by this study does not show the comprehensive use of the preposition "Gei".

In addition, with regard to the design of the survey, the researcher only focused on S1 and S2, which have higher utilization frequency. The study did not include the S3 construction, which is used less frequently. If it is possible to include the S3 construction of "Gei 1" and "Gei 2" into the survey, the survey results of the study can be of more help in understanding how learners of Mandarin Chinese understand the grammatical structure of the preposition "Gei". The other limitation of the study is that, in the course of conducting the linguistic analysis, the researcher relied primarily on individual linguistic sense; the similarities and differences in semantics and structure were secondary. This method may have resulted in the categorization being too subjective.

Despite the limitations of the current study, the researcher hopes that future scholars will continue where this study has left off. It is also hoped that the study will be able to provide a new perspective on the use of the preposition "Gei" and to serve as a reference encouraging more further research on this topic.



作者簡介

陳琪芬 (Chi-fen Chen),女,一九六九年出生於台灣新竹。一九九一年自 台灣輔仁大學應用心理系學士畢業。一九九四年起旅居泰國曼谷,二〇〇四年 在泰國朱拉隆功大學文學院東語系漢語專業學習中文作爲外語教學碩士班國際 課程。並於一九九五年起在國際學校 (New International School of Thailand) 擔 任中文教師至今。



ศูนย์วิทยทรัพยากร จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย